

# NATIONAL HERITAGE PROTECTION PLAN 2011-15

ACTIVITY PROGRAMME REPORT  
APRIL 2012 – MARCH 2013

Compiled by English Heritage  
April 2013



# CONTENTS

<b>Activity Programme</b> .....	5
<b>MEASURE 1 Foresight</b> .....	7
Activity 1A1: Long-Term Trends and Issues: Identification and Collation of Emerging Data.....	8
Activity 1A2: Assessing Threats and Opportunities for the Historic Environment.....	8
Activity 1A3: Data-Gathering and Assessment of Priorities for Understanding and Protecting the Historic Environment .....	9
<b>MEASURE 2 Threat: Assessment and Response</b> .....	13
Activity 2A1: Development Pressure.....	14
Activity 2A2: Resolving Impact of Carbon Challenge on Built Heritage .....	17
Activity 2B1: Tackling Neglect.....	21
Activity 2B2: Heritage Crime .....	23
Activity 2B3: Impacts of Recreational Activities .....	26
Activity 2C1: Major Environmental Threats.....	27
Activity 2C2: Attritional Environmental Threats .....	30
Activity 2D1: Agriculture and Forestry Impacts .....	38
Activity 2D2: Marine Exploitation Impacts .....	41
Activity 2D3: Energy Generation Impacts.....	43
Activity 2D4: Mineral Extraction Impacts .....	45
Activity 2D5: Materials Supply Loss.....	47
Activity 2E1: Heritage Management, Conservation and Craft Skills Shortages .....	49
Activity 2E2: Capacity Loss in Local Authorities.....	55
<b>MEASURE 3 Recognition and Identification of the Potential Resource</b> .....	59
Activity 3A1: Unknown Marine Assets and Landscapes .....	60
Activity 3A2: Unknown Coastal Assets and Landscapes.....	63
Activity 3A3: Deeply Buried / Subterranean Pleistocene and Early Holocene Archaeology .....	66
Activity 3A4: Identification of Terrestrial Assets Via Non-Intrusive Survey .....	70
Activity 3A5: Identification of Wetland / Waterlogged Sites.....	80
<b>MEASURE 4 Assessment of Character and Significance</b> .....	85
Activity 4A1: Historic Towns and Suburbs .....	86
Activity 4A2: Later Twentieth-Century Heritage .....	93
Activity 4A3: Historic Ports, Dockyards, Harbours and Coastal Resorts .....	96
Activity 4A4: Public, Civic and Communal Buildings .....	99
Activity 4B1: Historic Water Management Assets .....	101
Activity 4B2: Traditional Industry, Modern Industry, Mining and Associated Housing .....	103
Activity 4B3: Transport and Communications .....	106
Activity 4C1: Sport and Entertainment Buildings and Landscapes.....	107
Activity 4D1: Places of Worship.....	108
Activity 4D2: Churchyards, Cemeteries and Burial Grounds .....	112

Activity 4E1: Battlefields .....	114
Activity 4E2: Twentieth-Century Military Heritage .....	116
Activity 4F1: Rural Historic Buildings and their Settings .....	120
Activity 4F2: Field Systems .....	127
Activity 4G1: Pleistocene and Early Holocene Archaeology .....	128
Activity 4G2: Ploughzone Archaeology .....	131
Activity 4H1: Submerged Heritage Assets and Landscapes .....	132
<b>MEASURE 5 Protection of Significance .....</b>	<b>137</b>
Activity 5A1: Strategic Designation Programme .....	138
Activity 5A2: Upgrade and Modernisation of Designation Base .....	139
Activity 5A3: Restructured Responsive Designation Programme .....	140
Activity 5A4: Supporting Local Communities in Protecting Significant Heritage Assets .....	141
Activity 5B1: Heritage Partnership Agreements and Model Management Plans .....	144
Activity 5B2: Underpinning Local Planning Processes .....	147
Activity 5B3: Developing Marine Heritage Management Structures .....	150
Activity 5C1: Enhancing the Capabilities of Historic Environment Records (HERS) .....	151
<b>MEASURE 6 Management of Planned Change in the Historic Environment .....</b>	<b>157</b>
Activity 6A: Managing Change in the Historic Environment .....	158
Activity 6A1: Strategic Planning Frameworks .....	159
Activity 6A2: Early Support for Management of Change .....	161
Activity 6A3: Management of Scheduled Monuments .....	163
Activity 6A4: Decision-Making in the Planning Process .....	167
Activity 6A5: Supporting Care and Management of Listed Places of Worship .....	171
Activity 6A6: Supporting Informed Management of Change in the Marine Environment .....	172
Activity 6B1: Strategic Condition Monitoring .....	174
<b>MEASURE 7 Managing Major Holdings of Historic Assets .....</b>	<b>179</b>
Activity 7A1: Asset Management Plan .....	180
Activity 7A2: Managing Change at English Heritage Historic Properties .....	181
Activity 7A3: Preservation of English Heritage Archive Holdings .....	186
Activity 7A4: Preservation of English Heritage Historic Artefacts and Interiors .....	187
<b>MEASURE 8 Help and Advice for Owners .....</b>	<b>189</b>
Activity 8A: Advice and Grant-Aid to Protect Significance .....	190
Activity 8A1: Reducing Risk to Heritage Assets through Expert Advice .....	191
Activity 8A2: Building Specialist Capacity / Skills to Manage and Conserve Heritage Assets .....	193
Activity 8A3: Reducing Risk to Heritage Assets through Repair Grants .....	195
Activity 8A4: Reducing Risk to Heritage Assets through Acquisition and Repair .....	198
Activity 8A5: Offsetting Loss through Knowledge Dividend .....	199

This report uses a Red, Amber, Green (RAG) system to indicate the status of the projects and programmes.

The category definitions are:

- project/programme proceeding as planned and within anticipated deadlines and resource allocations.
- project/programme has some issues which are affecting, or will potentially affect, delivery within anticipated deadlines and resource allocations.
- project/programme has serious issues which will seriously jeopardise delivery, or project discontinued.

There is a further category to highlight completed projects – **Project Complete**.

# ACTIVITY PROGRAMME REPORT

---

This report provides a more detailed assessment of the progress of individual projects undertaken as part of the NHPP. It is arranged by NHPP Measure, then by Activity, and then by protection result, and is designed to be read in conjunction with the April 2012-March 2013 **Overview** document. For further details of the Plan across the period 2011-2015, please follow the links below, or see <http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/professional/protection/national-heritage-protection-plan/>.

- **Measure 1 – Foresight**  
Foresight is essential to a plan focused on establishing threats and developing responses.
- **Measure 2 – Strategic Threat Assessment and Response**  
This Group of Activities is aimed at 'winnable battles' to counter, offset or mitigate the loss of our most important heritage.
- **Measure 3 – Recognition and Identification of the Potential Resource**  
Rapid survey of areas of the country where even basic identification of what heritage we have is poor and where there is a real risk of losing nationally significant landscapes and assets before we even know what is at risk.
- **Measure 4 – Assessment of Character and Significance**  
This Measure focuses on a range of themes and places which are insufficiently understood, threatened by change, and of potentially high significance.
- **Measure 5 – Protection of Significance**  
The development of formal protection systems, such as Designation, and the development and expansion of Historic Environment Records.
- **Measure 6 – Management of Planned Change in the Historic Environment**  
This measure sets out English Heritage's statutory role in the planning process, giving pre-application advice and providing timely, constructive advice on managing major change to the historic environment.
- **Measure 7 – Managing Major Holdings of Historic Assets**  
Protecting and managing change to the national collection of historic sites, properties and archives in our care.
- **Measure 8 – Help and Advice for Owners**  
The provision of grant-aid and advice to owners and managers of heritage assets; and the funding of emergency investigation to offset the imminent and unavoidable loss of nationally significant assets.



## MEASURE I. FORESIGHT

A formal process of foresight is fundamental to a plan focused on establishing threats and developing responses to those threats. The development of appropriate intelligence-gathering and coordination mechanisms is essential to ensure that the sector can establish views on likely scenarios for the historic environment to inform our continuing and evolving implementation of the Plan. The Activities supported in this Measure will help to integrate approaches to horizon-scanning and impact assessment, test recommendations with sector partners, update the Plan accordingly, and review the progress and impact of the priorities taken forward.

Foresight comprises the following four Activities:

- IA1 LONG-TERM TRENDS AND ISSUES: ASSESSMENT AND ANALYSIS
- IA2 IDENTIFYING THREATS AND OPPORTUNITIES FOR THE HISTORIC ENVIRONMENT
- IA3 DATA-GATHERING AND ASSESSMENT OF PRIORITIES FOR UNDERSTANDING AND PROTECTING THE HISTORIC ENVIRONMENT
- IB1 REVIEW OF PROGRESS AND IMPACT

The four year allocation of resource (both staff and funding) for this measure for 2011-2015 is **£0.708M**

## ACTIVITY IAI: LONG-TERM TRENDS AND ISSUES: IDENTIFICATION AND COLLATION OF EMERGING DATA

### Context

Long-range assessment is important to help establish the nature of likely threats, impacts and opportunities. Oversight at this scale will consider the key trends (for example, climatic change, information technology development, demographic and social transformation). Action will focus on collating data from Historic Environment Sector and other sources and the

collation of the emerging data with existing trend data and sharing assessment across a broad platform.

**Activity Lead:** Pete Wilson, Foresight Coordinator  
([pete.wilson@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:pete.wilson@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £97k

## ACTIVITY IA2: ASSESSING THREATS AND OPPORTUNITIES FOR THE HISTORIC ENVIRONMENT

### Context

Regular assessment of identified priority threats and indeed opportunities arising for the protection of the historic environment, undertaken in close cooperation with our partners and stakeholders, will permit the NHPP to refine and where necessary redefine priorities for action. Consultation internally and with the

sector on a periodic basis with appropriate follow-up analysis is a key process within this Activity.

**Activity Lead:** Pete Wilson, Foresight Coordinator  
([pete.wilson@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:pete.wilson@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £159k



River flood levels at Cawood, North Yorkshire. Photo by Dave MacLeod, © English Heritage.



# ACTIVITY IA3: DATA-GATHERING AND ASSESSMENT OF PRIORITIES FOR UNDERSTANDING AND PROTECTING THE HISTORIC ENVIRONMENT

## Context

Foresight will be used to establish patterns for assessment of significance. As well as threat (IA2 above), this activity will capture local and national values to fine-tune broader priority goals, and will continue to tap into sector-wide intelligence on research gaps to ensure added value from protection-based priorities.

**Activity Lead:** David Batchelor, Head of Historic Environment Intelligence ([dave.batchelor@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:dave.batchelor@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £276k

Foresight is the process of maintaining adequate sector intelligence and using this to identify trends and issues (threats and opportunities) in the medium to long term and assess the implications of change resulting from these trends and issues. Foresight informs strategic thinking and planning, and helps develop responses to particular issues and in so doing helps to build resilience into the organisation/sector.

One component of foresight is horizon scanning and its purpose is to better enable organisations prepare for future events which may have direct or indirect impacts upon them or their business. Horizon scanning involves the systematic examination of potential threats, opportunities and likely future developments which are at the margins of current thinking and planning. Horizon scanning should highlight novel and unexpected issues, as well as new elements of persistent problems or trends. The scans are intended to present structured information about an issue which may impact upon English Heritage or the historic environment at some time in the future. As well as raising an issue the scans are intended to start further discussion which may modify the nature of the impacts and also help develop appropriate responses.

As part of the development of the NHPP, English Heritage now undertakes foresight work on a formal basis, and will be producing Horizon Scans as free-standing documents on emerging issues. To this can also be added the results of a facilitated foresight workshop organised by the NHPP Advisory Board in conjunction with the Historic Environment Forum. The summary report from this workshop can be found [here](#); key issues which emerged included climate change and associated food and energy security, demographic change, political attitudes to heritage and the development of technology. A separate workshop, arranged by EH and the AHRC to explore with leading academics the relationship between NHPP and AHRC research programmes also had a foresight module and arrived at very similar conclusions. Collaboration with other sector partners in future planning has included work on: UK National Ecosystem Assessment, Development of Historic Environment (HE) Indicators for Nature Improvement Areas, Developing HE input into discussions on Water Management and the Environment, Natural England's revision of National Character Areas, and production of a Statement on Climate Change and the Historic Environment for inclusion in Defra's National Adaptation Programme. The task is now to assess from these very large issues what the specific impacts on our heritage may be and assess the threats and opportunities associated with them.

Horizon scans completed in the past year:

- Climate Change (Horizon Scan **2012-01**)
- Local Authority Cuts (Horizon Scan **2013-01**)
- Ecosystem Services Approach to Environmental Management (Horizon Scan **2013-02**) (in draft)
- Whole place community based budgets (Horizon Scan **2013-05**)
- [Government disposal of marine heritage assets (Horizon Scan **2013-11**) (**subsumed** into **2013-14**)
- Loss of a disproportionate number of senior conservation staff in English Local Planning Authorities (LPAs) (Horizon Scan **2013-12**)
- Government Disposals (Horizon Scan **2013-14**) (in draft)
- Permitted Development Rights for the conversion of offices to residential use (Horizon Scan **2013-15**) (in draft)

- Horizon scans in preparation:
- Water Management and the Environment (Horizon Scan **2013-03**)
- Impact on local authority generated designation applications of the fall in local authority historic environment advice (Horizon Scan **2013-04**)
- World War I wreck memo remembrance (Horizon Scan **2013-06**)
- Wreck ownership responsibilities (Horizon Scan **2013-07**) (in prep)
- Cross-environment discovery and recovery reporting of finds (Horizon Scan **2013-08**)
- Implications of charging for marine advice (Horizon Scan **2013-09**)
- Public attitudes to the sea and the marine historic environment (Horizon Scan **2013-10**)
- Development pressures on local authorities (Horizon Scan **2013-13**)
- Building Information Modelling (BIM) (Horizon Scan **2013-16**)
- Methodist & Nonconformist Chapels (Horizon Scan **2013-17**)
- Community/Neighbour Planning and Rural Buildings (Horizon Scan **2013-18**)
- Farmsteads (Horizon Scan **2013-19**)
- Rural buildings and Development (Horizon Scan **2013-20**)
- Stone Supply and Skills (Horizon Scan **2013-21**)
- Agri-Environment Schemes (Horizon Scan **2013-22**)
- Woodland – Overview of Forestry Commission's schemes (Horizon Scan **2013-23**)
- Rural Growth Networks (Horizon Scan **2013-24**)
- Energy Futures Overview (Horizon Scan **2013-25**)

In addition more discursive 'Situation Reports' have been produced on emerging topics including: Sector Skills Council and Labour Market Intelligence. In addition to this, focused research includes an important assessment of the threats to local authority built heritage asset portfolios as a result of shrinking budgets and reduction in heritage staff. The research, collaboratively funded by EH and HLF, sampled about 1/6th of local authorities in England and its findings suggest among other things that in the next 5 years, as many as 25% of asset managers thought they would close heritage assets, 43% thought that they would dispose of assets, 26% thought that they would transfer management and 10% expected to demolish heritage assets (see <http://www.helm.org.uk/server/show/nav.21790>, para 7.12).





## MEASURE 2. THREAT:ASSESSMENT AND RESPONSE

Natural processes and human activity impact on our heritage. Some processes and activities have a very significant impact that can be countered, offset, mitigated or adapted to in ways that reduce the loss of our most important heritage. English Heritage already gathers significant intelligence on such impact via its Heritage at Risk programme. This Measure aims wider support and action at these ‘winnable battles’ where focused action can make a real and lasting difference. Activities are grouped under the following headings, but will focus on specific targeted subsets of each heading, as set out in the more detailed descriptions. Action should focus explicitly on establishing tangible responses to the most urgent and serious threats.

Threat assessment and response comprises the following 14 Activities:

- 2A1 DEVELOPMENT PRESSURE
- 2A2 RESOLVING IMPACT OF CARBON CHALLENGE ON BUILT HERITAGE
- 2B1 TACKLING NEGLECT
- 2B2 HERITAGE CRIME
- 2B3 RECREATIONAL ACTIVITIES
- 2C1 MAJOR ENVIRONMENTAL THREATS
- 2C2 ATTRITIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL THREATS
- 2D1 AGRICULTURE AND FORESTRY IMPACTS
- 2D2 MARINE EXPLOITATION IMPACTS
- 2D3 ENERGY GENERATION IMPACTS
- 2D4 MINERAL EXTRACTION IMPACTS
- 2D5 MATERIALS SUPPLY LOSS
- 2E1 HERITAGE MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION AND CRAFT SKILLS SHORTAGES
- 2E2 CAPACITY LOSS IN LOCAL AUTHORITIES

The four year allocation of resource (both staff and funding) for this measure for 2011-2015 is **£6.325M**

Facing page: Prehistoric standing stone and wind farm on St. Breock Down, Cornwall (2D3). Photo © English Heritage.

## ACTIVITY 2AI: DEVELOPMENT PRESSURE

### Context

Many of England's historic settlements, both urban and rural, are undergoing considerable change. Pace of urban redevelopment and reorganisation of housing provision strategies will have significant impact on heritage. Action will seek to facilitate strategic resource planning and engagement with partners and stakeholders in those places which are (1) undergoing most change, (2) most sensitive to change, and (3) least resourced to manage change. Research on the

degree of likely change through planning applications, master planning and other activities, linked to the spatial distribution of heritage assets in those areas, will be used to develop methodologies and tools for guiding sustainable change and minimising negative impacts.

**Activity Lead:** Charles Wagner, Head of Planning and Urban Advice ([charles.wagner@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:charles.wagner@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £298k

### Protection Result 2AI.1: Identification of areas of development pressure to prioritise resources to manage change

#### 6170 Collection of evidence of development pressure

This and project 6171 aimed to collect information on permissions granted for development in the last 5 years and combine that with projected areas for change through Local Development Frameworks. It has produced digital information on predicted development pressure, for example housing growth (though we would have liked to have also looked at infrastructure, commercial or energy development); analyses spatially against the NHLE (and ideally also AMIE, HLC, NMP, EH Settlement Atlas and NCA data for EH web based GIS); also to compare these two data sets against the results of the annual survey of Local authority Historic Environment Resource. The project was to analyse the evidence and identify areas subject to greatest pressure for change.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Initial gathering of data completed in July 2012 and paper presented at EH conference: updated with new data on historic environment staffing in August. This project then rolled into the next one. We were looking to a completion date of end 2012. Completion delayed to March 2013.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

#### 6171 Map development pressure

See 6170 above

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Mapping overlays produced by July and used for presentation at EH conference. As data was updated so mapping has been redone. Latest phase of project is looking at mapping within a local authority area. Looking to a completion date of end 2012. Completion delayed to March 2013.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

## Protection Result 2A1.2: Identification of practical responses to future housing growth initiatives

### 6172 Evaluation of impact of housing on historic environment

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** We selected some case studies from the sites identified through 6170 & 6171 to evaluate in more detail their impact on the local historic environment, with the objective of being able to compare the results between areas of good/poor levels of understanding, and between rural, urban and fringe areas. What was of interest was evaluating how often large new housing development is in the same area as concentrations of designated heritage assets. Findings so far have proved inconclusive.

Data on housing allocations in local plans at their various stages has been gathered from the start and is one of the datasets used for the mapping. We have realised that given the review of local plans over 2012 and 2013, this data set will continue evolving. The initial project covering this evaluation finishes in March 2013, but we may seek to have it extended until the end of 2013, given that we want to capture the revised housing allocations that every local planning authority will have to have in place in 2013.

**Anticipated/actual date of completion:** March 2013/March 2014.

### 6172 Further research on Evaluation of impact of housing on historic environment

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project is intended to develop the evidence base in relation to the effects of larger scale housing development on the historic environment, and to build a greater understanding of successful (and unsuccessful) methods of mitigating and managing these effects in order to demonstrate actual impact as against expected or forecast impacts.

Inception meeting in early April 2013.

**Date of completion:** September 2013.

## Protection Result 2A1.3: Delivering sensitivity tool to inform development

### 6173 Simple tool for assessment of sensitivity of historic environment to development pressure

The project aims to establish current projects and guidance produced across the sector on assessing sensitivity in the historic environment, including HLC-based sensitivity assessment draft guidance and draft LCA new topic paper, and in conjunction with EIA/SEA working Group, to identify common approaches and test extent of use.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Following on from previous work, the paper prepared by the Characterisation Team has been issued as an internal EH discussion paper, coupled with a draft publication. A follow up will be in an appropriate heritage management journal. This to be done before the end of 2013.

**Date of completion:** End of 2013.

### 6174 Pilot projects for sensitivity tool of historic environment

Case studies using results of Project 6173 to develop improved sensitivity assessment methodology in rural and urban areas, with good and poor resources and with good or poor understanding of significance.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** This depends on an evaluation of existing work undertaken or commissioned by EH as a scoping paper to be produced internally. It will consider the projects featured as case studies in *Understanding Place: Context and Character in Local Planning* and other exercises undertaken by the EH Characterisation Team. This is to be done by summer 2013. discussion paper, coupled with a draft publication. A follow up will be in an appropriate heritage management journal. This to be done before the end of 2013.

**Date of completion:** June 2013.

### 6455 Evaluation of English Heritage Involvement in EIAs

This research study will look to retrospectively evaluate the effectiveness of the current EIA consultation procedures with EH. It will look at how many EIA cases EH was statutory consultee for, and of those how many EH responded to, and how many cases where EH was not a consultee was there any impact on how the historic environment was treated.

**Status:** Project complete

**Progress:** [Report](#) has been finalised and a version has been made available on our website. It will feed into work on producing EH external guidance on EIA and the historic environment as well as helping form EH responses to the ongoing review of EIA by both the EU and DCLG.

**Date of completion:** August 2012.

### Retail development and town centre management

This research project is intended to provide an analysis of recent trends in retail and retail development together with town centre management issues as they both relate to historic cores.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** A final report was received in March as both we and the authors were looking to make changes to keep up with the interest in the future of retail. This report fed in to a further debate on the future of retail and historic commercial cores that EH held on 19 March 2013. How we take this forward in 2013 is still being decided.

**Date of completion:** Summer 2013.



## ACTIVITY 2A2: RESOLVING IMPACT OF CARBON CHALLENGE ON BUILT HERITAGE

### Context

The drive towards a carbon-neutral economy may have significant impacts on the adaptation of historic building stock to increase energy efficiency and decisions about conversion/reuse vs. new build. Action will focus on developing the evidence base required to ensure that the appropriate decisions are made that avoid unnecessary degradation of our most significant heritage assets.

**Activity Lead:** Sally Embree, Head of Conservation Teams ([sally.embree@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:sally.embree@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £1.124M

### Protection Result 2A2.1: Sound evidence base to enable informed decisions on improving the thermal and energy efficiency of traditionally constructed buildings

#### **6267 Thermal performance of traditional building elements**

The project involves *in situ* and laboratory research to establish the thermal performance of traditional building elements, including windows, walls, floors etc. and the impact of different adaptations. It will also allow an assessment of the applicability of calculated methods to such building elements.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The *in-situ* phase of testing of solid brick walls and the thermal conductivity tests of the brick samples were completed in 2011 and 2012 respectively. The final report will be published in April 2013.

Further work under laboratory conditions to look at the impact of moisture on the thermal performance of solid brick walls has started with the construction of the walls. Initial testing is due to begin in Autumn 2013.

A project to assess the thermal performance of timber sash windows before and after the installation of secondary glazing in English Heritage's offices in Swindon has been set up. The first round of monitoring to gather baseline data has been completed and post-installation monitoring will take place during the next heating season and again after two years to assess long-term performance.

**Date of completion:** March 2015.

#### **6269 Whole-house thermal performance and impacts of interventions**

This project will help us better understand the thermal performance of traditionally constructed buildings and predict the behaviour of solid walled brick terrace houses. The work has been focused on a late 19<sup>th</sup> Century brick terrace house in New Bolsover where English Heritage has been working in partnership with Bolsover District Council. The aim of the project is to evaluate the improvement in thermal performance *in-situ* before and after implementing energy saving interventions. This is being done by assessing whole house heat loss both by analysing the contribution made by the individual building elements and by using a whole-house test method. The cost-effectiveness of different energy-saving interventions is also being assessed and will help to inform English Heritage's guidance on refurbishing existing housing.

**Reason for status:** ●

**Progress:** *In-situ* testing was carried out in 2011 and 2012 and a draft report has been completed. This was sent out for external peer review at the end of 2012 and publication has been delayed to allow us to address the issues that were raised. The final report will be published by Summer 2013.

**Date of completion:** Summer 2015.

### 6270 Technical risks of insulation

The project will carry out *in situ* monitoring and laboratory tests to understand the technical risks associated with insulating older buildings; for example, assessing the condensation risk at the interface of the insulation and the fabric, looking at the impact of reducing ventilation and the potential for fungal and other damage.

*In-situ* monitoring to understand the technical risks associated with insulating older buildings is being carried out as part of the New Bolsover case study and as part of the Energy Saving Trust's Solid Wall Insulation Field Trials. The monitoring has been devised to assess the changes in moisture content profile at the interface of the insulation and the fabric and to provide an early warning of moisture and mould risk. The focus of this work is to assess the condensation risk from insulating a solid wall and compare the performance of permeable and impermeable systems.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** To date *in-situ* monitoring (of relative humidity and temperature and wood block resistance measurements) is underway at two sites: at New Bolsover and at a separate case study house provided through the Energy Saving Trust's Solid Wall Insulation Field Trials. This fieldwork is being supported by laboratory work where the insulation systems are being replicated to monitor performance under controlled conditions and the results from both the field and laboratory studies will be compared with outputs from hygrothermal models.

**Date of completion:** Summer 2015.

### 6520 SPAB Building Performance Survey 2011-2013

In the winter of 2011 the Society for the Protection of Ancient Buildings (SPAB) embarked upon a research study to assess the performance of seven traditional buildings before and after refurbishment designed to improve energy efficiency. The research looked at a range of factors that may affect the energy performance and environmental behaviour of traditionally built dwellings from fabric heat loss, air infiltration, hygrothermal behaviour to indoor air quality.

The 2012 post-refurbishment monitoring and reporting was supported, in part, by a grant from English Heritage. Further funding has been offered towards additional monitoring costs in 2012-13.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The interim findings have been published in a series of research reports.

**Date of completion:** Overall study due to complete in 2015.

### 6530 Planning policy for the sustainable use of energy in traditional dwellings

English Heritage is working with the Centre for Sustainable Energy (CSE) to develop nationally-relevant guidance and resources on how energy efficiency improvements can be made to traditional buildings without harming their character and significance. The guidance produced will help local authorities and communities create responsible local planning policy on energy efficiency retrofit in older dwellings, in the light of the national Green Deal scheme and the new Localism Act. This project will produce community consultation guidance and resources, template policy guidance, and technical guidance based on current and recent research in the field.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The materials will be tested through a local authority pilot project with Wiltshire Council.

**Date of completion:** Summer 2013.

## Protection Result 2A2.2: Better understanding of energy use in traditionally constructed buildings and of the potential benefits and impacts of different kinds of adaptation to reduce that energy use

### 6271 Improving energy models for traditional buildings

This project is examining and testing the suitability of energy models when applied to older buildings. It will inform our understanding of the accuracy of the application of RdSAP to assess the energy performance of traditional buildings.

An energy model has been built to compare the SAP ratings achieved by using RdSAP default and actual measured data. It is being developed using data captured as part of the New Bolsover case study to assist the interpretation of the thermal testing results.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Test data from New Bolsover has been inputted into SAP 2005 and 2009 models to inform interpretation of the results of the whole-house thermal performance testing. Further work is currently being carried out to determine the relative benefits of individual/packages of interventions. The values being calculated will include energy savings, cost and payback figures.

**Date of completion:** Summer 2013.

## Protection Result 2A2.3: Best practice advice on adaptation to reduce energy use

### 6272 Microgeneration and traditional buildings

This project aims to deliver advice and guidance on the application and appropriateness of microgeneration to traditionally constructed buildings.

English Heritage has produced a series of guidance notes on small-scale renewable energy options. Guidance has already been produced on micro-wind generation and small-scale solar thermal and solar-electric (photovoltaics) and these guides will be reviewed and updated.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Guidance on heat pumps and traditional buildings has been published. The next priority will be to produce guidance on small-scale hydroelectric power and traditional buildings.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

### 6273 Guidance for owners on improving energy efficiency

Provision of best practice advice and guidance for owners and managers of traditionally constructed buildings.

Following publication of 'Energy Efficiency and Historic Buildings' and 13 supplementary fully illustrated 'element' guides, the English Heritage web pages on energy efficiency and traditional buildings have been enhanced <http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/professional/advice/advice-by-topic/climate-change/energy-efficiency/> and a new section created for homeowners <http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/your-property/saving-energy/>. We will continue to enhance our advice and guidance and in particular are focusing on how it can be tailored to help Green Deal Assessors, specifiers, contractors, local authority conservation officers and planning staff as well as owners and managers of traditionally constructed buildings.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The focus has been on improving our online advice and guidance and further consideration is being given on how best to target our advice to help Green Deal Assessors, specifiers, contractors and local authorities as well as owners and occupiers of older buildings.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## Protection Result 2A2.4: Best practice advice and guidance on the application and likely impact of carbon reduction legislation on older buildings

### 6274 Guidance on alterations to legislation concerning carbon reduction

This will ensure the provision of advice, guidance and training in response to changes to existing and new legislation arising from the Government drive to reduce carbon dependency.

The Green Deal, launched in January 2013, is the Government's flagship energy efficiency initiative. English Heritage is working closely with stakeholders to ensure the best possible outcome for historic and traditional buildings through the Green Deal process. As a steering group member of the Sustainable Traditional Buildings Alliance (STBA) we are working to promote a better understanding of the performance issues of traditionally constructed buildings to ensure the best possible outcome for historic and traditional buildings. STBA's report 'Responsible Retrofit for Traditional Buildings' published in September 2012 highlighted that a new approach to the retrofit of traditional buildings was necessary for the success of the Green Deal. DECC have responded positively to the concerns raised in the report and have committed additional funding for research into some of the associated technical issues to help reduce the risks to vulnerable traditional buildings. The work and dialogue will be ongoing to ensure the best possible outcome is achieved through the Green Deal process.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** As a steering group member of the STBA and as member of the Older Properties Working Group we continue to work closely with stakeholders to ensure the best possible outcome for historic and traditional buildings through the Green Deal process. We are also actively participating in working groups looking at the skills and knowledge required by Green Deal Assessors and installers in order to undertake Green Deal work on traditionally constructed buildings.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.



Installing secondary glazing panels to the English Heritage office in Swindon, Wiltshire. Photo by James O. Davies, © English Heritage.

## ACTIVITY 2BI: TACKLING NEGLECT

### Context

A major threat to our most significant built heritage assets is poor care and neglect. There are numerous causes for neglect and we do not yet have sufficient information on range and distribution. Action will focus on developing an understanding of the nature of this neglect in order to establish patterns and distributions of asset types, and geographical regions; this will help target practical partnership and support to counter the impact of neglect.

**Activity Lead:** John Ette, Ancient Monuments Inspector ([john.ette@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:john.ette@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £169k

### Protection Result 2BI.1: Developing an understanding and creating a problem profile for neglect

#### **6179 Profiling neglect**

Desk based assessment to draw together information from the sector on neglect: to determine where neglect is currently happening, what factors/drivers contribute to neglect, identify any gaps in current knowledge base.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Input into HAR grade II pilot survey to include recording of neglect. Monitoring of pilot studies is ongoing including training for volunteers on identifying neglect. A call for papers will be made in May following delays due to NPCD restructuring. A meeting was held with national BPTs in October 2012 to further scope gaps in knowledge.

### Protection Result 2BI.2: Scoping future impact of neglect

#### **6180 Sample area assessment under HCI**

Area based assessment to profile neglect through the HCI in contrasting urban, urban fringe and rural (spare to peri-urban) contexts (links to 4F1 and 2A1), taking into account their historic character and socio-economic profiles taken for project 6179. The methodology used for this profiling will be offered as an output/best practice example of how to understand the current and potential impact of crime on the HE. This task will draw on the data and expertise of all organisations signed up to the HCI through the Memorandum of Understanding. A meeting with consultants has taken place to further scope neglect and its links to austerity.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Due to the NPCD Review it was agreed to defer commissioning of sample area assessments until early 2013. This will also allow further analysis of HCI and refinement of the PD which will result in a call for proposals following discussion with the new peer groups.

## Protection Result 2BI.3: Developing a prioritised strategy to address the impact of neglect

### **Stopping the Rot – a revision of guidance**

The project has updated the 1999 guidance for local authorities on the escalating enforcement measures (Section 215 Notices, Urgent Works Notices, Repairs Notices and Compulsory Purchase Orders) afforded to local authorities, which can be very effective tools to help secure the preservation of historic buildings. Seminars held in Derby, Ely, Hastings and Manchester in 2010.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Seminars held in East Midlands, Hartlepool and Wolverhampton 2012; Birmingham, Newcastle and Reading in February 2013.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## ACTIVITY 2B2: HERITAGE CRIME

### Context

Heritage crime (e.g. theft of architectural features, interiors; theft from sites; criminal damage to buildings, monuments and other manifestations) is a major issue: for example church roof lead loss in 2010 was running at £1m per month. Volume crime and anti-social behaviour degrades significance of assets and leads to devalued communities. However, crimes remain very under-reported and infrequently acted upon. Action

will aim to gather and collate evidence for crime, review legislation and recommend change, and work with partners to develop cost-effective deterrents and interventions.

**Activity Lead:** Mike Harlow, Legal Director ([mike.harlow@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:mike.harlow@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £585k

### Protection Result 2B2.1: Reduction of heritage crime

#### **6154 Heritage Crime Initiative: Establishing and coordinating partnership working**

This programme will deliver facilitation and co-ordination of central, joint agency intelligence gathering, strategic assessment, Strategic Tasking and Co-ordination Group (STCG) and Alliance to Reduce Crime against Heritage (ARCH) groups, Local Authority memorandum of understanding on heritage crime (which includes theft of historic objects from historic (or other) buildings, as well as theft of materials, such as lead from roofs. A police analyst will help develop the strategic assessment and tactical plan.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** We continue to maintain the national agency partnership working with the Association of Chief Police Officers (ACPO) and the Crown Prosecution Service (CPS) and a growing number of local and national park authorities who have signed a memorandum of understanding, promising to work in partnership to prevent and enforce heritage crime: up from 10 at April 2012 to 16 now. A number of authorities have indicated their intention to become signatories to the MoU.

Our picture of the problem and therefore the quality of our strategic advice continues to improve and develop. The increased understanding comes from the national research carried out under the NHPP, information and feedback provided by local heritage crime partnerships and our own commissioned intelligence analysis that feeds into the strategic discussions with ACPO, CPS and participating local authorities. We have been working with ACPO in order to develop and enhance the intelligence-gathering and analytical function that will lead to more effective preventive and enforcement activity.

Work to maintain the national partnerships, to stimulate more local partnerships and to steadily improve our understanding of the problem and how to tackle it will carry on throughout the plan period. Heritage crime has been highlighted as a thematic by the Police and Crime Commissioners for some areas and others have indicated their intention to make it a policy objective.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

#### **6165 Heritage Crime: Intelligence on extent/impact of heritage crime**

Receiving, surveying for and processing national intelligence, including devising means of storage and analysis, and publishing results.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Research on baseline impact of third party crime has been published and very widely picked up by the media. The findings have proved very useful in influencing stakeholders as well as in informing more successful and targeted strategies. **Complete.**

Our next area of research will investigate owner/occupier breaches of listed building consent legislation. A brief has been prepared and a contractor has been appointed. The research will be difficult to conduct with no guarantee of success. But it is an important area of understanding and would be very useful in influencing local authorities. The

research should be complete for Summer 2013. **Spring 2013.**

In late 2013/early 2014 we intend to undertake research that will develop our understanding of the links between tackling crime and increasing inward investment and the prospects of successful regeneration; and the links between inward investment and regeneration on long-term crime statistics. **Tbc.**

EH continues to play a key role in the National Metal Theft Working Group and supported the passage of the Scrap Metal Dealers Act through the legislative process. **Ongoing.**

EH is now working in partnership with Sussex Crimestoppers, Sussex Police and the National Farmers Union as part of a Rural Crime Campaign. This is the first campaign that provides a specific focus on the historic environment. We hope that the campaign can be repeated across the country.

### **6184 Guidance on reducing the impacts of heritage crime**

A programme of useful guidance on avoiding crime or reducing its potential impact on heritage.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The following guidance package is being produced:

1. Heritage Crime Risk: Quick Assessment Tool. **Complete**
2. Heritage Crime Risk: Detailed Assessment Guidance. **Autumn 2013**
3. Preventative Measures: Quick Assessment Tool. **Complete**
4. Preventative Measures: Detailed Assessment Guidance. **Complete**
5. Guidance on Interventions: Prosecutions and Alternative Disposals. **Complete**
6. Heritage Crime Impact Statements. **Complete**
7. Guidance for Sentencers. **Autumn 2013**
8. Guidance on theft of metal from church buildings. **Spring 2014**

This should then provide a complete suite of guidance for concerned owners, local groups and professionals involved in local heritage crime partnerships. It should enable them to identify their heritage assets, single out those at most risk, implement appropriate preventative measures, enforce the law in a proportionate manner that takes account of the true nature of the harm done and impose well-measured sentences.

The guidance relating to the theft of metal from church buildings will be reviewed on completion of the Metal Marking Pilot in the East Midlands.

The issuance of the guidance will be accompanied by a revamp of the web-pages to provide much more audience tailored information about how to deal with the crime threat, as well as maintaining basic information about the Heritage Crime Programme itself.

### **6185 Training and guidance for agency and community groups**

Instigation of networks to tackle key priority topic areas for that year, arranging and taking part in training. Guidance on sentencing, preventative measures, setting up local networks, investigation and standard impact statements all issued and endorsed by partners.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Training across the country is ongoing and well-received. It brings together many different professions from within conservation and crime enforcement. It provides a stimulus for local partnership development.

The current programme of general awareness training will be reviewed at the end of the year. Next year we will be looking to continue awareness briefings at local authority level and add in more specific skills training in prevention and enforcement for a more targeted audience. Heritage Crime will feature as part of the Professional Training in the Historic Environment at Oxford University.

Over 6,500 people have attended a briefing on heritage crime and how to tackle it since 2010.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.



**6479 Strategic assessment of crime and ASB affecting heritage assets****Status:** ●**Progress:** This ongoing work is reported on above under 6165.**Date of completion:** Ongoing.**6567 Heritage Crime awareness seminars****Status:** ●**Progress:** This ongoing work is reported on above under 6185.**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## ACTIVITY 2B3: IMPACTS OF RECREATIONAL ACTIVITIES

### Context

Accidental or unthinking damage to heritage can be the regrettable by-product of some leisure activities. These include off-roading, caving, metal-detecting (to be distinguished from criminal activities such as 'nighthawking') and sports diving. Action will focus on development of a risk assessment for such activities to establish which require responses. Responses will

mainly comprise educational measures and guidance on mitigation of impact.

**Activity Lead:** Pete Wilson, Foresight Co-ordinator ([pete.wilson@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:pete.wilson@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £17k

### Protection Result 2B3.1: Reduction of accidental damage to the historic environment through leisure activities

#### **6275 Prioritising recreational activities with unwanted impacts**

The proposal here is a rapid assessment of the range of land-based, marine and inter-tidal recreational activities that impact on heritage assets, from which can be developed guidance for recreational activities where accidental and unintentional damage to heritage can occur and how to avoid it.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Main progress in this reporting period has been the completion of data collection on recreational activities by an external contractor (see Project 6755 below). The Activity is on target for the development of guidance in 2013-14 and dissemination in 2014-15.

**Date of completion:** Guidance drafted March 2014. Dissemination 2014-15.

#### **6755 Recreational Activities that can have an adverse impact on the Historic Environment**

The overall objectives of the Project were to:

- Ensure a broad, but not necessarily comprehensive coverage, of the types of activities that can potentially pose threats;
- Inform the number, character and extent of Codes that may be required to counter the range of threats, including the potential need for a Code specifically relating to activities undertaken in the inter-tidal zone;
- Identify existing activity-specific guidance that may provide vehicles for dissemination of Historic Environment specific advice when revised;
- Collate website and contact information relating to Recreational Activities to assist in developing and implementing the dissemination stage of the Activity.

The survey results being intended to provide data to inform the targeting and development of the Guidance in relation to Recreational Activities and the Historic Environment that the Activity Team will develop.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Contractor has delivered analysis and listing of recreational activities that may have adverse impacts on the Historic Environment as required, along with details of existing guidance available to those participating in recreational activities and contacts for key organisations. As anticipated in the tender document the data will assist in development of Guidance for Recreational Groups.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

## ACTIVITY 2CI: MAJOR ENVIRONMENTAL THREATS

### Context

While uncertainty remains over trends, currently we recognise flooding events and erosion as threats whose severity may be increasing in certain areas as a result of climatic changes. Apparent reduction in precipitation may increase fire risks in moorland or woodland areas. Related directly to such threats, national and international directives and legally binding measures (for example for water management and water quality) may have a significant impact on heritage assets. Action will

focus on partnership working to establish risk mapping and strategies for prioritising tactical responses. The artificial distinction between threats/impacts covered here and some under 2C2 is recognised.

**Activity Lead:** Neil Redfern, Team Leader, Yorkshire and Humber ([neil.redfern@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:neil.redfern@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £725k

### Protection Result 2CI.1: Understanding immediate natural and environmental threats to the historic environment

#### **6186 Assessment of Natural and Environmental Threats**

The project aims to provide a rapid assessment of the types of natural and environmental threats which impact on the historic environment.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Brief in development – some delay due to internal restructuring.

#### **6187 Hydrological changes to wetland sites**

The project aims to understand the likely changes to the hydrological context of wetland sites as a result of predicted climate change, and in partnership with other agencies and land-owners to determine whether these can be countered through adaptation and management options.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Current concerns on delivery due to lack of relevant case study. Solution being discussed and timetable to be amended.

### Protection Result 2CI.2: Identifying heritage assets most at risk from natural and environmental threats

#### **6188 Characterisation of heritage assets most at risk from natural and environmental threats**

Rapid characterisation projects to identify historic assets and landscapes that may be particularly vulnerable to certain risks, e.g. where likelihood of Boscastle/Lynmouth/Cockermouth type floods or Fylingdales fire are greatest.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Brief in development – some delay due to internal restructuring. Project to be run in conjunction with 6186

## Protection Result 2CI.3: Flood/erosion risk assessments and impact reduction measures

### **6277 Coastal RCZAS risk assessment pilot study**

A regional pilot study of risk to the historic environment posed by coastal change. This will combine the Rapid Coastal Zone Assessment Survey results with the Environment Agency flood risk and erosion mapping. Yorkshire selected as pilot for its varied coastline and completed RCZAS. Methodology will be that already tested for the EH Coastal Estate Risk Assessment (5982). This work is also combining elements of the initial survey work for 6278 Inland flooding risk assessment pilot study.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Project design on target, work to commence this year

### **6278 Inland flooding risk assessment pilot study**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Project design on target, work to commence this year – being run in conjunction with 6277.

## Protection Result 2CI.4: Increased resilience of heritage assets to natural and environmental threats

### **6189 Flooding and historic bridges impact assessment**

Pilot project assessing impact of flooding on historic communication infrastructure (roads, rivers, railways & bridges). In the immediate aftermath of the November 2009 Cumbrian floods, concern was raised at the highest political levels about the hazard caused by historic bridges during extreme flood events. The project should be developed to research the possibilities for making sensitive changes to historic bridges that may be at risk of damage due to flooding etc., for example by strengthening parapets or arches. Whilst such changes may not be wholly desirable, they might avoid the alternative option of demolition. Should also address the possible need to raise bridges to make them more resilient to flooding.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Delayed due to internal restructuring. To be timetabled to follow-on from completion of 6186 and 6188.

### **6190 Land management guidance for vulnerable landscapes**

Production of guidance for land managers for vulnerable landscapes – Farming the historic landscape – caring for historic environment features in upland landscapes.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Deferred to 2013. Ongoing discussions to deliver as single contract with 6191 and 6192.

## Protection Result 2CI.5: Effective counter-disaster responses for heritage assets

### **6191 Assessment of past natural and environmental threats – lessons learnt**

Lessons learnt - Comprehensive assessment of past natural and environmental catastrophes to understand responses and disseminate lessons learnt.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Deferred to 2013. Ongoing discussions to deliver as single contract with 6191 and 6192.

### **6193 Environment Agency partnership working on resilience and disaster planning**

EA – EH Partnership working. A range of partnership working with the EA needs to be explored to underpin issues and best practice set out above and to ensure heritage issues are imbedded in wider resilience planning.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Funds re-allocated to 2013/14. Call for projects to be issued on completion of 6186 and 6188.

### **6194 Natural England partnership working on resilience and disaster planning**

Partnership working with Natural England. A range of partnership working with the NE needs to be explored to underpin issues and best practice set out above and to ensure heritage issues are imbedded in wider resilience planning.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Funds re-allocated to 2013/14. Call for projects to be issued on completion of 6186 and 6188.

## Protection Result 2CI.6: Reduction of negative impact on heritage assets arising from third-party responses to natural and environmental threats

### **6196 Assessment of river basin management plans**

Analysis of the 9 relevant River Basin Management Plans nationally to identify and locate the actions that will be performed by other actors (principally EA, but also impacting on NE and British Waterways work) in fulfilment of Epoch 1 (2015) and Epoch 2 (2025) Water Framework Directive targets for groundwater, surface water and diffuse pollution. Identify places where critical change is proposed and understand the scale and timing of the threats with a view to producing guidance and influencing mitigation processes. Time-critical – to be of potential use for understanding & influencing implementation of Epoch 1 actions should be completed in next FY. Essential for defining the places in which to concentrate resources for some of the 3A5, 4B1 and 4B3 projects.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Funds re-allocated to 2013/14.

## ACTIVITY 2C2: ATTRITIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL THREATS

### Context

A wide range of environmental processes threaten the preservation of heritage assets, whether built, buried or submerged, interior or exterior. These can be characterised as physical (e.g. severe precipitation, wind, changes in relative temperature or humidity, compression, dewatering), chemical (pollutants, acidification, corrosion etc.), or biological (microbial, fungal, invasive plants, insects and invertebrates, larger, burrowing and roosting animals). Climate change is accelerating many of these impacts (and probably

retarding others). Action will focus on the need to understand the likely impacts on our most significant heritage and to develop priority responses.

**Activity Lead:** Jim Williams, Senior Science Advisor, East Midlands ([jim.williams@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:jim.williams@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £829k

### Protection Result 2C2.1: Impact assessment and improved responses to attritional threats to *historic buildings and landscapes*

#### **2681 Visitor erosion study**

An evaluation at Cawthorn Camps to determine impact of footfall on erosion.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** On hold until Groundwell Ridge report (8A5.4589) is completed.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

#### **5532 Bats and historic churches: St Nicholas, Stanford, Northamptonshire**

Bats and historic churches: English Heritage/Natural England mitigation trial research project, Stanford on Avon, Leicestershire. The project aims to reconcile the triangulated interests of protected species, historic fabric and fittings and continuing use of the church for its primary function. It will explore the possibility of encouraging the soprano pipistrelles in the church to move to a new roost within the building. The work has been provided with faculty approval and is supported by the DAC.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Although the project has delivered all agreed products, careful financial management has allowed the timetable to be extended for a further two years. The additional period will fund cleaning for a further year; ensure the bat boxes (alternative roost sites) are left in place for two more years with periodic monitoring to assess use; and procure one or more bat counts to quantify the population. The benefits will be that we get a better understanding of the situation and the project will end at a point when the DEFRA-funded research will be delivering results which may help inform the strategy for the future of St Nicholas. The work has also informed generic guidance which is available here <http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/professional/advice/advice-by-topic/places-of-worship/bats/batsliving/>.

**Date of completion:** April 2014.

#### **6197 Landscape management of historic parks, gardens and sites**

Coordinated programme of projects to address the historic parks, gardens and landscape conservation and management implications of attritional environmental threats ranging from physical, chemical to biological.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The first project in this category is 'Ivy on Walls – Phase II' (Phase I completed before inclusion in NHPP). The School of Geography and the Environment at Oxford University were commissioned to undertake the research and the project started in April 2012.

Investigation and monitoring are continuing on the purpose built trial walls at Wytham Wood and data is being collated but no analysis will begin until a minimum of 12 months data has been accumulated.

**Date of completion:** March 2016.

### **6198 Developing protection for exposed (ruined) walls: Soft wall capping**

Investigation into the benefits of soft capping historic walls as a more effective way of conserving exposed wall tops than the usual mortared, hard caps to combat the freeze thaw cycle and driving rain.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Monitoring of test sites at Wytham Wood and Godstow Priory continue. Results continue to indicate effectiveness of soft capping and some progress is being made with the technical difficulties associated with the measurement of moisture level differences within walls. Trials on establishment and potential increased acidity at Castle Acre Priory are in progress but results cannot be obtained until a minimum of 12 months have passed. Extra funding was successfully obtained for the full scale soft capping of an entire site (Hailes Abbey) which is currently in progress. This will enable the visual/aesthetic appearance to be considered on a site scale. Technical Advice Note being drafted with a publication date planned for late 2013.

**Date of completion:** September 2014.

### **6657 Addressing limestone decay: evaluation of nanolime**

Research and evaluation of nanolime as a consolidant for stone surfaces on historic buildings. The development of nanolime has provided a possible mechanism by which effective consolidation of limestone should be possible. This project using laboratory and site-based tests aims to measure the effect of nanolime treatment on decayed limestone and to establish the optimum conditions for successful treatment.

**Progress:** Phase 1 of the research was completed in August and Phase 2 is underway with parallel streams of investigation being carried out at the University of Bath (using a variety of weathered stones) and in site trials (York Minster, Exeter Cathedral, Ely Cathedral, Salisbury Cathedral and Tewkesbury Abbey). These investigations and trials are focusing on the role of stone type, how different application procedures affect the penetration, carbonation and consolidating effect of nanolime. Results are being collated in June/July 2013 and they will show what further research may be required and whether sufficient information and data has been gathered to be able to suggest guidelines for site use of nanolime. In the meantime, current advice is:

It is evident that the effectiveness of the material depends to some extent on the pore structure of the stone being treated as well as the regularity and mode of application. Initial results on a number of sites suggest that the depth of penetration may be limited; however the consolidating effect at the surface has (in some cases) allowed for other treatments (such as mortar repairs) to be carried out to a sound substrate.

**Status:** ●

**Date of completion:** Summer 2013.

### **6658 Protective Glazing: An evaluation of secondary glazing systems for the protection of stained glass windows and the improvement of energy efficiency in historic buildings**

Protective secondary glazing systems (often called isothermal glazing) have been used for the protection of historic stained glass for more than a century. However, little research has been carried out on the different systems used, nor on the improvement they make to the energy efficiency of the building itself - usually a church. This research includes a comprehensive literature review (mainly German) and analysis and monitoring of a number of recent systems which have been installed in important historic churches and cathedrals. The most significant work is the installation of a new system in the church at Long Melford, which is to be carefully monitored. Microbiological activity has attacked the very important C15th glass and control measures are being trialled and tested. Different protective glazing types are also to be modelled to help evaluate performance and their impact on energy efficiency.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The monitoring programme at Long Melford completes on 1st April and all data analysis and reporting will take place immediately afterwards. The monitoring was installed at The Vyne (a National Trust property) in September

2012 and is producing excellent data. Literature gathering and review is ongoing and should be completed by the end of winter 2013. The remaining work (light tests, assessment for data from the other sites and all reporting) will be during the second half of 2013 and early 2014).

**Date of completion:** Spring 2014.

### **6659 Stone Deterioration**

3 year CASE Studentship with Nottingham University carrying out research into the deterioration of stone. The processes that cause permeable stone to deteriorate are surprisingly poorly understood. Most research has investigated single mechanisms when many inter-related phenomena are involved. The work will look in particular at Magnesian limestone, which has been widely used for building, but is subject to rapid and dramatic environmental decay, which can feasibly be replicated under laboratory conditions. X-ray computed tomography will be used to study the microstructure of deteriorating stone at depth and it is hoped that the high resolution of this innovative technology should make it possible to characterise a number of internal changes which cause its failure. Ancient and new stone will be tested and all will also be subject to conventional tests as well. Howden Minster will also be used as the principal field site.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** A symposium was held in York in October to help finalise the detailed brief for this sponsored research. However the sponsored student has withdrawn and the studentship with Nottingham University has been terminated. The hope is that the research may be pursued at another university.

**Date of completion:** Not going ahead.

### **6660 Damp Towers**

Many tall solid-walled historic buildings suffer from water ingress when exposed to driving rain, particularly church towers in the south west of England. The English Heritage Damp Towers research project through a number of case studies, site work and laboratory tests have assessed methods for determining the condition of solid walls and the effectiveness of repairs. Laboratory and site work have confirmed the effectiveness of grouting and rendering at reducing water penetration without retarding drying rates. The performance and potential of different pointing mixes was also tested in the lab at Oxford University.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The conference to disseminate the results of this project will now take place in April 2013 and two publications (a technical advice note and a research transaction) will be published later in the year.

**Date of completion:** Autumn 2013.



## Protection Result 2C2.2: Impact assessment and improved responses to attritional threats to *buried archaeological assets*

### 3907 A1 Soil stack, Selby

This project was conceived as research into preservation *in situ*. A Romano-British settlement discovered in evaluation in advance of the construction of the A1(M) in Yorkshire was uncovered and recorded by Oxford Archaeology North, and was then buried under a massive soil stack during motorway construction. The effects of this burial were then investigated when the stack was removed.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The report has been completed and is now just awaiting conversion into PDF format for publication in the EH Research Reports Series.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

### 4597 Understanding mechanisms of degradation of buried archaeological sites within woodland environments

A collaborative project with the Forestry Commission to develop methodologies for determining how land use affects the preservation of archaeological remains *in situ*.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Remaining tasks are

- a) completion of RD report
- b) write project proposal for 2nd stage

This project is currently on hold because of staff availability issues.

**Date of completion:** Not yet known.

### 4983 Badger-damaged barrows: synthesis

This project will result in a published set of papers on burrowing animal damage, with case studies detailing the nature of the threat and the protection methods used in response, including reports on fieldwork undertaken as part of the English Heritage badger-damaged round barrows project.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The project has been delayed and additional time is needed to finalise EH contributions and wait for promised external contributions.

**Date of completion:** June 2014.

### 5497 Assessing impacts on and capacity for (re)burial of archaeological timber artefacts

Assessment of the practical feasibility of reburial of archaeological timbers in waterlogged soils in terms of long-term preservation to reduce capacity requirements within traditional stores and potentially reduce conservation costs.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project is running a series of experiments reburying wood then lifting it and looking at its condition microscopically and chemically. Progress good and up to date.

**Date of completion:** November 2014.

### 5512 Assessing impacts of climate on exposed prehistoric rock art

CASE AHRC Studentship: Non-invasive monitoring of the microscopic changes in prehistoric rock art.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** PhD student in making steady progress with lab work and limited field trials.

**Date of completion:** December 2014.

**5534 CASE EPSRC hydrological/chemical change in wetland burial environments of Somerset Levels**

A project to study the in situ preservation of wetland archaeological sites through monitoring at two sites in the Somerset levels (Sweet Track and Glastonbury Lake Village). The project has been designed to identify whether an integrated, intensive and analytical approach to the analysis of spatial and temporal variability in groundwater chemistry, redox potential, and water table depth, can be used to characterize these two sites more fully, and hence inform on the current and future in situ preservation potential of both inorganic and organic remains. It is also hoped that as a result, this research will contribute towards in situ preservation research more widely.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The PhD (for which this funding was provided) has been completed and submitted within the deadline. It was examined and revisions are now being made.

**Date of completion:** Spring 2013.

**6281 Effects of bracken rhizomes and their control on archaeological sites**

Analysis of both rhizome activity and the impacts of control mechanisms to provide baseline for developing more sympathetic control processes.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** A threat/opportunity assessment is being produced following the compilation of a position statement regarding bracken control and heritage at risk. A project proposal is being developed to produce guidance on bracken control in relation to the historic environment.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

**6494 Condition assessment and monitoring for preservation in situ of waterlogged archaeological remains**

This project will produce guidance on condition assessment of archaeological material, also on techniques for monitoring waterlogged archaeological sites.

The condition assessment guidance will provide those making decisions about long-term management of archaeological sites with effective tools to determine whether archaeological artefacts and deposits are well preserved (or not). This is particularly important in the context of those sites where re-burial and preservation in situ is proposed. The guidance will also focus on the rationale and mechanisms for monitoring of waterlogged archaeological sites, both at the site and wider catchment scale. This will help those managing heritage assets to understand whether or not there may be sufficient water (in terms of volumes, levels and quality) available on site and within the local system or wider catchment to sustain long-term preservation *in situ*.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This project has started, and the first draft of the guidance has been produced. In addition, three projects to provide further detail and text for these guidelines (including projects 6523 and 6524 below) have been contracted out to external organisations.

**Date of completion:** May 2014.

**6523 Preservation in situ guidance – soil moisture measurement**

With the increasing realization that organic archaeological remains can be preserved within partially unsaturated deposits the requirement to measure the moisture content of deposits is becoming just as crucial as the recording of redox potential and water levels. The relationship between the capillary zone, the water table and the level of preservation of organic remains requires further investigation. This project aims to assess the equipment available for use in the unsaturated zone, where and how it has been used previously and make recommendations for use by English Heritage for inclusion in forthcoming guidance on in situ preservation.

Time Domain Reflectometry (TDR) is now widely used for the in situ measurement of soil moisture and field trials will be conducted on two TDR systems to assess ease of installation, use and interpretation of data. Nantwich will be used as the test site as it is already the focus of a three-year monitoring programme with redox, water level and rainfall data being recorded.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** A desk-based report has been produced looking at previous soil moisture measurement. TDR equipment has been purchased and installed in an existing test site in Nantwich.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

#### **6524 Preservation in situ guidance – redox potential measurement**

Following the introduction of PPG16 soil redox potential has been viewed as one of the key parameters for defining the character of the burial environment, specifically for the continued preservation of organic archaeological and palaeoenvironmental remains. Numerous methods have been developed to measure redox potential and the overarching aim of this project is to provide English Heritage staff with informed knowledge about redox for use in proposed in situ preservation guidelines.

This project will involve both a desk-based assessment to collate details of existing use of redox monitoring and a twelve-month field trial, conducted in Nantwich which is currently the subject of a three-year monitoring programme funded by English Heritage.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** A desk-based report has been produced looking at redox measurements on archaeological sites. A range of different redox monitoring equipment has been installed in an existing test site in Nantwich.

**Date of completion:** August 2013.

#### **6739 Assessing impacts on and capacity for (re)burial of sandstone architecture**

Sandstone reburial test: assessing vulnerability to chemical dissolution and (where significant clay content) water expansion. Assessment of priority threat (preservation in situ) and mitigation (freshly reburied material). Assessment of rate of attack on buried sandstone monuments.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This project has just started and is being undertaken by external contractors. In the coming months suitable material will be identified, initial analysis to characterise the stone will take place and then the stones will be buried in one of four different experimental clamps and monitoring will begin.

**Date of completion:** December 2016.

## Protection Result 2C2.3: Impact assessment and improved responses to attritional threats to *historic interiors and collections*

#### **6282 Assessing trends and priorities of insect attacks on interiors and collections**

Use of English Heritage and National Trust (c. 20yrs) insect pest trapping data from a wide range of sites with excellent regional coverage. The last decade of EH data is extremely well validated.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This work has been tendered to an external organisation and the project has just begun.

**Date of completion:** February 2014.

#### **6285 MEMORI: Detection of chemical degradation of historic collections/ interiors**

Two main elements, developing a sensor and reader for oxidising (external) pollutants and acidic pollutants (mainly internal acetic acid etc.) and determining the effect of acidic internal pollutants on organic materials, cellulosic, varnishes, pigments, leather and parchment and textiles. Consortium project partnered by English Heritage. Grant funded through EC Seventh Framework. [http://www.memori-project.eu/memori\\_project.html](http://www.memori-project.eu/memori_project.html)

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** 14 deliverable reports to European Union.  
Final conference organised.  
8 workshops run or organised.  
12 peer reviewed papers published.

A significant area of risk for organic collections has been assessed and tools developed to manage it. A new tool for monitoring acetic acids and oxidising gases in enclosures has been developed.

**Date of completion:** November 2014.

### **6286 Change or Damage? Assessing damage from climatic changes to interiors and furniture**

Effect of Climate on Decorative Furniture Surfaces in Historic Properties. Systematic work assessing damage caused by changing humidity and by exposure to light. Wood assessed as the second most damaged material in English Heritage collections, a number of curatorial questions arise, which need to be answered in an interdisciplinary context. Heritage Science post-doctoral research project in the AHRC/EPSRC Science and Heritage Programme, supported by English Heritage. <http://www.ucl.ac.uk/sustainableheritage/changeordamage>.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Final seminar to disseminate results set for April  
Exact vulnerability for furniture to RH fluctuations and lighting conditions has been determined.

**Date of completion:** April 2014.

### **6287 Heritage Smells: Developing non-invasive condition surveying tools for historic collections:VOC**

The new devices will be non-invasive, non-contact, portable and simple to use providing real-time data; making them well suited to address cultural heritage questions and survey collections, particularly for objects where potential hazards, access issues or sampling restrictions have precluded study to date.

Interdisciplinary and collaborative research Project in AHRC/EPSRC Science and Heritage Programme, supported by English Heritage. <http://www.ucl.ac.uk/sustainableheritage/heritagesmells.htm>.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Aging and database completed. Analysis of plastic objects at Dover and natural history at Osborne and Swiss Cottage. Public events at British Museum and British Library.

**Date of completion:** September 2013.

### **6288 Developing non-invasive condition surveying tools for historic collections: OCT**

The Next Generation of Optical Coherence Tomography (OCT) for Art Conservation – in situ non-invasive imaging of subsurface microstructure of objects.

This project will encourage more frequent and thorough examination of curated objects for early warning of deterioration, to better inform conservation strategy, and create long term savings in the cost of conservation.

Interdisciplinary and collaborative research Project in AHRC/EPSRC Science and Heritage Programme, partnered by English Heritage. [http://www.heritagescience.ac.uk/Research\\_Projects/projects/IRG/Liang](http://www.heritagescience.ac.uk/Research_Projects/projects/IRG/Liang)

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** New instrument developed, will allow much improved monitoring of glass, enamel, amber, painting collections.

**Date of completion:** December 2013.

### **6289 Responding to corrosion of historic iron**

Evidence-based Condition-Monitoring Strategy for Preservation of Heritage Iron.

Project aims to test new ideas for managing the preservation of heritage iron via the concept of 'corrosion control' rather than 'corrosion prevention'.

Interdisciplinary and collaborative research Project in AHRC/EPSRC Science and Heritage Programme, partnered by English Heritage.

<http://www.cardiff.ac.uk/share/research/projectreports/conservationiron/index.html>

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Background research into corrosion rates of 300 objects complete and effects of environment assessed. Now developing tool to deliver the results to heritage managers and allow more effective management of iron heritage.

**Date of completion:** September 2013.

### **6290 Preparing historic collections for climate change**

The project aims to predict the likely major effects of climate change relevant to collections housed in historic buildings over the next century. The project will use models, verified with present climate and environment data, to understand the likely indoor climate of a few rooms from representative building types. The likely risk profile will then be assessed by modelling the interior environments combined with mould growth modelling.

Heritage Science Collaborative Doctoral Award in AHRC/EPSRC Science and Heritage Programme, supported by English Heritage.

[http://www.heritagescience.ac.uk/Research\\_Projects/projects/CRS/Lankester](http://www.heritagescience.ac.uk/Research_Projects/projects/CRS/Lankester)

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Thesis submitted June 2012, incorporated into University of Paris expert group on climate change impact on CH. Four papers published. Research incorporated into UK museum pest expert group. Results driving collections conservation research and 2C2 of NHPP, for example predictions of increased mould growth in many properties.

**Date of completion:** June 2012.

### **6291 “Collections Demography” On Dynamic Evolution of Populations of Objects**

This project examines heritage collections as dynamic populations, seeking to understand how the populations evolve and the relationship between a single object and the group. It will holistically address the demography of collections in relation to age, use and environmental influences through the optics of the values attached to heritage.

Interdisciplinary and collaborative research Project in AHRC/EPSRC Science and Heritage Programme, partnered by English Heritage.

<http://www.ucl.ac.uk/sustainableheritage/collectionsdemography.htm>

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** New management approach to paper based collections, Will allow better environmental decisions. Book being written, final seminar date in May.

**Date of completion:** September 2014.

## ACTIVITY 2DI: AGRICULTURE AND FORESTRY IMPACTS

### Context

Agriculture and forestry present very significant threats to our designated and undesignated archaeological heritage, buried and built. Intensification appears inevitable. Out of the 19,721 Scheduled Monuments, just under 20% are at immediate risk of destruction or loss, with agriculture and forestry land management practices outside the development control framework being the main reasons. Agricultural buildings and complexes are under threat from piecemeal change,

redundancy or conversion. Action will focus on reducing cultivation impact and developing practical management regimes.

**Activity Lead:** Amanda Chadburn, Senior National Rural and Environmental Adviser ([amanda.chadburn@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:amanda.chadburn@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £378k

### Protection Result 2DI.1: Robust risk data and mitigation strategies for rural archaeological heritage

#### 4908 Owmbly plough damage monitoring

Long-term condition monitoring project

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** A Project Brief was sent out internally in October 2012 and is currently being reviewed.

#### 6144 COSMIC: Conservation of Scheduled Monuments in Cultivation

This project – being undertaken in collaboration with Natural England - aims to identify and prioritise designated archaeology at risk from arable cultivation and provide realistic management options to farmers and heritage managers alike. This phase sees the national roll-out of the COSMIC risk assessment, involving a farmer questionnaire and a desk-based risk assessment methodology (supplemented where necessary by aerial photography and lidar imagery).

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project is progressing well and on time with aerial photographic/lidar analysis well underway. A variation order has been agreed to cover the extra time needed to view APs and Lidar at Swindon, to look at extra sites in the Yorkshire Region and to produce a database with the compatible with the EH HAR database. This will not affect the overall timescale of the project.

#### 6203 CASE: Understanding chemical impacts on metal artefacts

The primary evidence on most battlefields, siege and skirmishes sites of the pre-Industrial period is in the form of unstratified metal artefacts, which have lain in the topsoil since the time of the action. These artefacts have been subject to varying degrees of decay depending on ground conditions in the intervening centuries and on the impact in recent decades of modern agricultural practices which are believed to be accelerating this decay. Such decay, both under the impact of modern agriculture and in the more distant past, is one of the most poorly understood of archaeological processes. While the proposed study (the subject of a joint English Heritage/University of Huddersfield bid to the AHRC for a PhD studentship) will be focused upon battlefields, it will also be of relevance to many other spheres of archaeological study, where a lesser proportion of the evidence is in the form of unstratified metal artefacts in the topsoil.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** English Heritage and the University of Huddersfield will be bidding for funding from the Arts and Humanities Research Council's Collaborative Doctoral Partnership Scheme. A PhD entitled "Investigation of chemical degradation of metallic artefacts in agricultural regimes".

**6468 Turning the Plough update Assessment (Turning the Plough 2)**

Building upon the 1999 survey of medieval surviving ridge and furrow landscapes in the East Midlands (Turning the Plough), which identified that only 43 medieval townships had survival of 18% or above of their original extent, the primary aim of the project is to use aerial photographic coverage to re-assess current survival of ridge and furrow in these areas, in order to determine whether the previous trajectory of loss has continued or been ameliorated by initiatives such as Environmental Stewardship.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** No change from previous report. A separate project for adding the Turning the Plough 2 (TTP2) data to the Selected Heritage Inventory for Natural England (SHINE) database is being considered.

## Protection Result 2DI.2: Adequate integration of the historic environment within Defra and Natural England land management policies

**6292 Revision of National Character Area Statements and input to targeted landscape surveys planned for 2011-2013**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** No change from previous report. A separate project for adding the Turning the Plough 2 (TTP2) data to the Selected Heritage Inventory for Natural England (SHINE) database is being considered.

EH has a formal agreement with Natural England to look at their draft NCAs, and provide revisions and advice. 42 NCAs have now been looked at by the Historic Environment Intelligence team who are coordinating input from English Heritage, including NPCD input. This work is ongoing.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

**6797 Selected Heritage Inventory for Natural England (SHINE) 2012 & 2013 & SHINE into HLS**

The SHINE (Selected Heritage Inventory for Natural England) project – a collaboration between Natural England, ALGAO and English Heritage – aims to create a single, nationally consistent dataset of undesignated historic environment features from across England that could benefit from management within the Environmental Stewardship scheme. The project has created a methodology that allows local authority HERs (Historic Environment Records) to contribute data directly from their local record into the national SHINE dataset.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project is near completion with NE funding coming to an end on 31st March 2013. Work has also been ongoing in developing and testing the use of the SHINE platform for consulting HERs and EH online in respect of Higher Level Scheme applications, and some final testing and training remains to be done.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

## Protection Result 2DI.3: Prioritised strategy for action on Government rural estate affected by disposal or major planting/harvesting

### **6293 Priorities in heritage woodland**

EH, working with partners, will identify those woodland areas where the potential for archaeological landscape preservation is greatest and which are due for major harvesting/planting cycles. The project will provide a structure for prioritizing further targeted identification and assessment work, especially in the light of possible disposal of portions of the National Forest Estate and National Nature Reserves in the period up until 2015.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Project design very near completion; final stakeholder comments are expected by mid-April and it is hoped the project will be signed off in the near future and start early in the next f/year.

## Protection Result 2DI.4: Effective guidance for management and change of traditional farm buildings

### **6201 Revision of Traditional Farm Buildings Guidance**

Revision of this guidance and liaison with key stakeholders awaited publication of the National Planning Policy Framework, and will be linked to the completion of the Farmsteads Assessment Guidance under 4FI.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Work is underway and a final publication is expected in 2014.

**Date of completion:** 2014.

## Protection Result 2DI.5: Reduction of threat and detrimental impacts as a result of agricultural processes/activities

### **4597 Woodland burial study**

A collaborative project with the Forestry Commission to develop methodologies for determining how land use affects the preservation of archaeological remains in situ.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** The project was completed in early 2012.

**Date of completion:** 2012.



## ACTIVITY 2D2: MARINE EXPLOITATION IMPACTS

### Context

Passage of the Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009 recognises the rapid increase of exploitation of the marine environment. Submerged landscapes, wrecks and other sub-tidal heritage assets are under increasing risk. Fishing and dredging continue to have an impact. Sustainable exploitation requires understanding of the impacts and their distribution in relation to heritage

assets: suitable management approaches will then be developed for the most immediate threats and in the most significant areas.

**Activity Lead:** Chris Pater, Marine Planner ([chris.pater@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:chris.pater@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £177k

### Protection Result 2D2.1: Offset of seabed impacts through voluntary reporting protocols

#### **5838 Marine fisheries protocols for the reporting of archaeological discoveries**

This project will aim to expand the very successful marine aggregates producers' protocols for the reporting of finds to the marine fisheries industry. It is hoped that such a voluntary protocol will ensure that significant discoveries are logged and located to permit their identification and where necessary/feasible the management of the sites from which they came.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Wessex Archaeology has reported progress through monitoring reports with effective promotion in local media and national newspapers. Partnership with Sussex IFCA is working well with discoveries logged through 'MIDAS' system. Information about the project also sent to Defra (UK Marine Monitoring and Assessment Strategy programme). The project should conclude in March 2013.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

#### **6162 Marine Aggregates Reporting Protocol**

This project provides funds through a tri-partite agreement with The Crown Estate and BMAPA for the awareness portion of the marine aggregates reporting protocol scheme. This scheme ensures that information about finds is regularly disseminated to staff via newsletters, site visits and workshops.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Over the last year Wessex Archaeology has conducted nine site visits to English wharves and produced two newsletters. As such the project is running to time and budget, with all deliverables to be completed as originally agreed.

The scheme is to be funded for a further two years in 2013 and 2014. There are clear and demonstrated benefits from the awareness scheme, utilising site visits and regular dissemination via a newsletter to enable the reporting of archaeological materials recovered during marine aggregate extraction. In addition, the current tri-partite funding agreement with TCE and BMAPA gives us excellent value for money and a partnership approach to delivery.

**Date of completion:** 2014.

#### **6204 Assessing impacts of fishing on the marine historic environment**

The objectives of this project are to determine how fishing impacts are affecting the marine historic environment through a phased programme of work to map interested parties and engage with stakeholders to develop partnership action.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The Project Design was completed and advertised in July 2012 with the successful contractor notified in September 2012. The project will conclude in June 2013.

**Date of completion:** June 2013.

## Protection Result 2D2.2: Maximising seabed data returns through whole-sector surveys

### **6205 Coordinated Marine Survey and Investigation**

This project is designed to optimise data utilisation to support marine historic environment research objectives and professional development through training programmes that examine geotechnical and geophysical datasets generated by offshore development programmes and projects.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The Ground-truthing Areas of Palaeolandscape Potential project is deferred and ongoing work associated with 6231 (Audit of current state of knowledge of submerged palaeolandscapes and sites) means that further work on the preparation of a tender will be deferred until FY 2013/14.

## ACTIVITY 2D3: ENERGY GENERATION IMPACTS

### Context

Significant changes in the means of energy generation and supply are anticipated in the short to medium term. These will have an impact on historic structures no longer required (see 4B2), but also on heritage assets where generating structures are sited (microgeneration on buildings, windfarms in estates, biofuels on archaeological landscapes and similar). The

likely negative impacts (and any opportunities) will be assessed and appropriate responses advanced.

**Activity Lead:** Sarah Tunnicliffe, Policy Officer, Rural and Environmental ([sarah.tunnicliffe@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:sarah.tunnicliffe@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £163k

### Protection Result 2D3.1: Reduction of negative impacts of large scale wind, solar and tidal/wave energy developments

#### **6206 Wind energy impact assessment**

This project aims to review and examine past EH and Planning Inspectorate wind energy casework outcomes as one aid to the revision of EH guidance on wind energy developments.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project began in the summer of 2012 and following initial scoping work, began a more detailed case by case analysis phase (via interrogation of the EH CONCASE system, and interviews with regional colleagues).

**Date of completion:** 2013.

#### **6207 Wave and tidal energy scheme assessment**

This project aims to provide practical guidance on the potential impacts of wave and tidal energy generation schemes to the historic environment, and appropriate management and mitigation responses.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project was initiated over the summer of 2012. A draft document is out for consultation and a meeting was hosted with external parties on 7 March.

**Date of completion:** 2013.

#### **Updating English Heritage wind energy guidance**

This project aims to update the 2005 English Heritage wind energy guidance to reflect technological changes and changes to both energy and planning policy in the intervening period.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** An initial update of the technical and economic factors relating to wind energy which have changed since the release of the original guidance document in 2005 has been completed but the update awaits completion of 6206 and stakeholder consultation and engagement.

**Date of completion:** 2014.

## Protection Result 2D3.2: Reduction of the impact of power transmission infrastructure

### 6208 Power transmission and the historic environment

This project aims to develop a generic approach of assessing the impact of overhead and underground transmission lines on the historic environment. England (and the UK more widely) is about to enter a period of sustained development of energy infrastructure and so developing, if possible, such an approach would be extremely timely.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** A draft project design has been completed and is being shared with stakeholder consultation and comments. Tendering for the project will commence at the start of 2013/14 f/yr.

**Date of completion:** 2014.



Electricity pylons at Aston Ingham, Herefordshire. Photo by Peter Williams, © English Heritage

## ACTIVITY 2D4: MINERAL EXTRACTION IMPACTS

### Context

As a result of Defra's Aggregates Levy Sustainability Fund (closed in March 2011 as a result of the Government's spending review) understanding of the impacts of extraction on land has been well developed; much of this understanding transfers to non-aggregate minerals. However, dimensional stone and other non-aggregate minerals (e.g. coal, china clay) require some impact

assessment, and marine dredging for aggregates is also less well understood. Action will focus on regional impact assessments and tailored strategies for mitigation.

**Activity Lead:** Jon Humble, Senior National Adviser, Minerals ([jon.humble@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:jon.humble@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £540k

### Protection Result 2D4.1: Better informed impact risk assessments for extraction areas

#### **Terrestrial Minerals Archaeological Resource Assessments (MARA)**

The programme will continue Archaeological Aggregates Resource Assessments previously supported by the ALSF but, where appropriate, it will also consider different forms or specific types of minerals extraction. Projects review the known and unknown archaeological resource in relation to mineral bearing areas, inform future planning considerations, and propose preferred options and mitigation strategies for future extraction.

#### **5590 MARA: North Yorkshire – managing landscape change**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Completed April 2012. Project has enhanced the evidence-base and provides a much improved platform for strategic decision-making on mineral extraction and archaeology. The methodology is innovative and therefore of wider applicability.

#### **5787 MARA: Nottinghamshire Aggregates Resource Assessment leaflet**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** [Booklet published.](#)

**Date of completion:** April 2012.

#### **6485 MARA: Shropshire**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Project proceeding satisfactorily.

#### **6487 MARA: Buckinghamshire and Milton Keynes**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Project proceeding satisfactorily.

#### **6488 MARA: Northamptonshire**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Project proceeding satisfactorily.

#### **6490 MARA: Cumbria**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Project proceeding satisfactorily.

**6491 MARA: Staffordshire****Status:** ●**Progress:** Project proceeding satisfactorily.**6492 MARA: China clay bearing grounds****Status:** ●**Progress:** Project proceeding satisfactorily.**6495 MARA: Herefordshire****Status:** ●**Progress:** Project proceeding satisfactorily.

## ACTIVITY 2D5: MATERIALS SUPPLY LOSS

### Context

Local distinctiveness is very often the result of the specific materials used in buildings and structures. This is true of stone, ceramics and also natural materials such as thatch. If the sources of particular materials become inaccessible then that distinctiveness will erode and the character or significance of heritage assets and places will be diminished. Action will focus on phased research to understand, safeguard and enhance strategic

freestone supplies in England, assessment of the issue of thatch and development of long-term strategies for response.

**Activity Lead:** Chris Wood, Head of Building Conservation and Research ([chris.wood@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:chris.wood@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £137k

### Protection Result 2D5.1: Evidence to support access to locally distinctive stone sources

#### 6661 Strategic Stone Study

In historic buildings conservation work, it is vital to obtain stone which matches the original in its mineral composition, density and porosity. If not, new stone could hasten the decay of the original and is unlikely to weather in the same way, therefore looking very different. However most of the quarries for our older buildings have closed and detailed information on the stones used is difficult to find. This means that it can be extremely challenging to find suitable alternatives. The Strategic Stone Study aims to address these problems. English Heritage is working with the British Geological Survey, local geologists and historic buildings experts from each county in England to identify the most important building stones used, representative buildings and historic quarries.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** By March 2012 2,698 building stones, 10,604 building-stone quarries, and 13,654 indicative stone structures (including 1,254 predominantly stone villages) had been identified. Pressure on resources and conflicting priorities has meant that it has only been possible to fund the completion of one further county (Nottinghamshire) this year and two atlases which were not completed previously. Options to complete the study are currently being explored possibly programming the remaining work over a four year period. The [database](#) has been rewritten with updated software so the intention is to publicise the site widely in early summer.

**Date of completion:** Subject to discussion.

### Protection Result 2D5.2: Development of viable responses to specific construction materials supply issues

#### 6220 Thatch Supply Research

This project being carried out by the National Thatching Straw Growers Association will grow older 19th century varieties of wheat which were known to have produced better thatch and be more resistant to bad weather. The project will:

- record the growing regime in detail to establish best practice;
- record the roofs which were thatched with these varieties and monitor their performance;
- build up data on growing straw and its use on the roof.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This pilot scheme is focused on the East of England on long straw thatching. The planting trials commenced on site this autumn, but the husbandry plots have suffered from the impact of the very poor wet weather from mid-October 2012 through to mid-February 2013. Progress has been made on the roof frames and completion is expected during the next 2 months.

### 6662 Trials of Collyweston slate production using artificial frosting of Collyweston log

There are currently no reliable sources of good quality Collyweston slate. Nearly all the material used for repair and conservation is now reclaimed from other buildings, which is not sustainable in the long-term. Furthermore the supply of materials is sporadic and the costs high. Conservation Officers and English Heritage caseworkers face serious problems, when dealing with applications involving re-roofing of Collyweston slated buildings. Furthermore as the owner of several buildings with Collyweston slate roofs, English Heritage has difficulty in sourcing materials for repair. It is therefore a highly desirable objective to establish a sustainable supply of new Collyweston slates. Research has been carried out at Sheffield Hallam University to develop an artificial frosting process. Artificial frosting is essential for the establishment of a new industry as it allows reliable, year round preparation of log and therefore higher volume of regular production, something that traditional outdoor frosting cannot provide. This project will finalise the design of the specialist freeze/thaw plant required to facilitate splitting of laminated limestone in order to manufacture Collyweston slate and carry out a large-scale trial of Collyweston slate production using artificial frosting at Apethorpe Hall in Northamptonshire.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The specially designed freezer unit has been installed at Apethorpe Hall and the freezing trials are going ahead as planned.



Collyweston slate being installed at Apethorpe Hall, Northamptonshire. Photo by Patricia Payne, © English Heritage.



# ACTIVITY 2EI: HERITAGE MANAGEMENT, CONSERVATION AND CRAFT SKILLS SHORTAGES

## Context

National guidance on protection and change management cannot be implemented successfully without a suitably skilled workforce. Maintenance of significance and heritage value of heritage assets and landscapes similarly relies to a great extent on the availability of a workforce with the right key skills in the right numbers. Pressure is intense in particular skill areas for a variety of reasons, and the integrity or maintenance of assets which rely on these skills are therefore at increasing risk. We need to ensure that the

relevant skills to care for and conserve our heritage remain available now and for the future, including heritage management, technical conservation skills and building and interiors crafts skills.

**Activity Lead:** Bob Hook, Historic Environment Intelligence Analyst (Professional Skills) ([bob.hook@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:bob.hook@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £743k

## Protection Result 2EI.1: Understanding capacity in key heritage protection and conservation skills areas

### 643I Craft skills labour market intelligence

This programme of work seeks to gather labour market intelligence on craft and practical historic buildings and landscapes conservation skills shortages.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** 'Repair, Maintenance and Retrofit of Traditional (pre-1919) Buildings'

The research stage is now completed by Pye Tait which was commissioned by English Heritage, Historic Scotland and CITB-ConstructionSkills to conduct this research to cover England and Scotland.

The steering group are reviewing drafts of the report. A workshop was held with key stakeholders to feed back on the initial results.

This research up-dates the previous NHTG LMI research but is also expanded to focus upon the skills needed to properly repair and maintain traditional buildings and especially in relation to the 'retro fit' and green agenda.

Progress is good and it is due to be completed and launched in Spring 2013.

**Date of completion:** Spring 2013.

### 653I Profiling the profession 2012-2013

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The second board meeting for the 4th iteration of the archaeology labour market intelligence survey Profiling the Profession was held. The data gathering phase of the project has concluded and analysis is underway. The project is running slightly behind schedule due to staffing difficulties with the contractor and an extension to the project has been agreed. The report will now be published in May approximately 8 weeks behind schedule.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

## Protection Result 2EI.2: Maintenance of key heritage management skills

### 6669 Support for traditional building craft bursary schemes

This includes the Traditional Building Skills Bursary Scheme for Displaced Apprentices – (the extension to the Traditional Buildings Skills Bursary Scheme) and the NHTG Building Traditional Skills scheme).

Skills and the National Trust giving advice and support via the Project Management Group.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** NHTG Building Traditional Skills scheme:

- 37 of 60 total placements are recruited, with 33 more identified and being recruited.
- 26 of 30 registrations for NVQ heritage Skills Level 3 diploma completed.
- After a slow start progress is now being made towards the target of 96 learners on Level 2 Courses with 45 completions at various locations around England.
- 60 of 144 completions of 2 day 'Understanding the Principles of Repair and Maintenance of Traditional (pre-1919) Buildings' at NVQ Level 3.
- 1 of 10 NVQ Level 4 Site Management (Conservation) placements has begun on Manchester Town Hall project.
- Towards the target of 6, Master Crafts and Senior Crafts Level 4, three potential candidates for further qualifications currently in development.
- Six of the target of 10 mentors have been recruited.

Project now fully resourced as Regional Coordinators appointed to each region.

Scheme website is now up and running.

There has been no progress on the target of 20 Heritage Specialist Apprenticeship.

Of the placements in existence, nine or 24% of the trainees are women on merit. This exceeds the HLF target of 15%.

There has been less success with towards the HLF target of 5% of placements to go to ethnic minorities. To date no placements have been awarded to ethnic minorities. The scheme is focusing efforts on this.

Project will contribute to the maintenance of capacity of key traditional building skills required for the physical conservation of the historic environment.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

Traditional Building Skills Bursary Scheme (Displaced Apprentices)

**Status:** ●

**Progress:**

- 10 of 45 total Displaced Apprentices have been recruited.
- The National Trust organised a successful Induction Event in London for all the Displaced Apprentices.
- The first HLF report and grant claim has been submitted.
- Promotional materials are being designed and produced. The scheme manager will be visiting construction colleges over the next few months promoting the scheme and careers in the heritage sector.

Project has started, is fully resourced with Project Manager and Administrator in post, website up and running, and publicity and recruitment is ongoing.

The Displaced Apprentices are across England and Wales and across a good range of trades: carpentry, joinery, and stone masonry and trowel occupations.

Project will contribute to the maintenance of capacity of key traditional building skills required for the physical conservation of the historic environment

**Date of completion:** September 2015.

**Historic and Botanic Garden Bursary Scheme (HBGBS)**

EH is the lead organisation and the Scheme has the formal support of 22 partner organisations which provide support in principle and also in practice through involvement in the placement and management groups as well as hosting trainees. The organisations are: GreenSpace, Institute of Horticulture, Sector Skills Council Lantra, Landex: Land Based Colleges Aspiring to Excellence; PlantNetwork; Professional Gardeners Guild; The City of London; The Eden Project; Historic Houses Association; Historic Royal Palaces; National Trust; National Trust for Scotland; Royal Botanic Gardens Kew; Royal Botanic Gardens, Edinburgh; Royal Horticultural Society; Royal Parks; The Forestry Commission; Sir Harold Hillier Gardens; Garden Organic; University Botanic Gardens; GARLAND: The Garden and Landscape Heritage Trust for the Advancement of Education and Training.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Round 6 completed at the end of August. Of the 19 trainees 9 moved straight into full-time employment in the industry including 8 with their host gardens. 4 accepted offers for further training at Wisley, Cambridge Botanic Gardens and English Heritage. 3 chose travel to extend their professional experience. 3 are actively applying for work and 1 failed to complete.

The Heritage Lottery Fund extended their funding to the scheme for a further two years bringing £400,300 to support 30 new training placements. This is 55% of the total extended project cost of £727,210. This grant increase means the scheme can hope to have delivered a total of 130 newly skilled horticulturists by 2014.

The latest round supervisors and mentors attended a seminar at Chatsworth House prior to the start of the placements on September 3rd. At the end of their first month the new trainees attended a trainee seminar jointly held with our partner the Professional Gardener's Guild. A combined total of 34 trainees benefitted from a 3-day interactive skills programme of training, personal presentations and visits.

## Protection Result 2EI.2: Delivering key protection and conservation skills through training and standards

**6221 William Morris Craft Skills Fellowships**

The William Morris Craft Fellowship is an advanced post-qualification training scheme in building conservation and repair developed and managed by the Society for the Protection of Ancient Buildings. It is for outstanding craftsmen and women qualified in one of the building crafts and already employed in the sector. As well as developing individual specialism, its purpose is to identify and train talented professionals who demonstrate the potential to progress into positions of responsibility on historic building projects. It is delivered in collaboration with established craftsmen and women, often past Fellows, on site and in workshops across the country. The Fellowship provides an all-round training in different crafts unlike other specialist courses.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Following successful agreement with SPAB EH is supporting the fellowship scheme for two years whilst it searches for longer term sources of funding. This year's intake of fellows has been recruited and started the first of three two-month blocks of study on 18<sup>th</sup> March. Block one runs from mid-March to mid-May (9 weeks) and comprises an arranged programme of group visits covering a wide range of building types, repair methods and materials.

**Date of completion:** September 2014.

**6222 Historic environment management labour market intelligence**

This programme of work seeks to gather labour market intelligence on professional and specialist historic environment skills shortages.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** English Heritage and the Higher Education Academy co-funded a survey of archaeological specialist skills survey. The resulting report was received and disseminated.

**6223 Historic Environment Traineeship Schemes**

Scheme to replace EPPICs and HETs: Two sets of placement schemes were agreed, to be run in conjunction with IfA. One addresses emergency labour market shortages and offers 3 six-month placements in buildings history and an 18 month placement training in photography (see 6574). The other offers 2 15-month placements in support of the HLF funded Skills for the Future scheme.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The scheme offering 2 15-month placements in Non-Intrusive Archaeological Techniques as part of the HLF funded Skills for the Future scheme recruited well and both interns are in post. They will spend six months each with Aerial Survey and Assessment teams and three months with Geophysical Survey team.

This scheme is run in conjunction with IfA.

**6224 Embedding S&G for curatorial conservation services (primarily about built environment)**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Financial support was provided for the 2012 IHBC summer school to further its training and CPD aims. See also 6557.

**Date of completion:** September 2012.

**6225 Developing standards and guidance for curatorial advice in local authorities**

This project seeks to advance consistency and quality in local authority provision of archaeological/investigative advice and conditions in the context of the current PPS5 and emerging NPPF. It is a partnership between ALGAO UK, IfA and English Heritage.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** A completed Standard and Guidance for archaeological advice by historic environment services was adopted by IfA at their AGM 8<sup>th</sup> October 2012 for a one year trial. This provides the first professional standard for local authority provision of archaeological advice, against which consistency and quality can be assessed. Further consultation on its use in practice is planned during 2012/13.

**Date of completion:** October 2012.

**6351 Bursaries for Mst in Building History 2011-2013**

A bursary fund was established to defray fees and other expenses of postgraduate students studying the MSt in Building History at the University of Cambridge. Awards are offered competitively to students subject to agreed criteria, and disbursements are in instalments over two years. The fund was set up in acknowledgement of the very real financial difficulties and disincentives faced by a substantial proportion of eligible applicants.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** In 2011, a £20K bursary fund for Cohort 1 students (2011-13) was agreed. Six candidates applied for bursaries. On the basis of agreed criteria, awards totalling the full amount of the fund were made to five candidates, but in the event two were unable to take up their offers. No other students were considered eligible, and accordingly the final awards, at £13K, were significantly less than anticipated.

Since then the course has completed its first year and has been judged highly successful by its University sponsors, EH backers, contributing academics and specialists, and enrolled students. Although examination marks are subject to final confirmation, it appears likely that the three students in receipt of 2011-13 bursaries will emerge as the three highest-scoring candidates in Cohort 1.

**Date of completion:** September 2013.

### **6557 English Heritage and the IHBC Annual School 2012**

This project provides strategic support for the delivery of training and educational strategies through the Institute of Historic Building Conservation (IHBC)'s national conference, its Annual School.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** A Project Design was submitted in 2012 for funding the school for two years.

The IHBC Annual School is a platform for training and professional development for historic environment conservation specialists. It is the IHBC's flagship national annual event drawing from a customer base of IHBC members, non-member conservation professionals and the broader sector.

Proposed and operated by IHBC, over its two years this project will help build on the institute's strong tradition of Annual Schools by enhancing central support and direction for the delivery of the training objectives of the school in line with wider sector needs. Resource implications are estimated at £6,500 *per annum* for two years.

**Date of completion:** September 2013.

### **6574 Historic Environment Placements: buildings history and photographic recording 2012**

The project will provide three funded placements of six months duration, to be delivered between July 2012 and January 2013 and a single placement of 18 months' duration to be delivered between August 2012 and December 2013. In addition, it will deliver four funded placements of six-months duration, to be delivered between June 2013 and March 2014.

The project aims to fill immediate skills gaps in the specialist fields of buildings' history and architectural and landscape photography by engaging talented individuals, retaining them and training them within the sector as skilled practitioners. The scheme also provides a model for improved training in the profession based on workplace learning.

The placements are designed for those with some experience of historic environment practice through study, work experience or both, but who have not had the opportunity to develop more specialist skills and competencies.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The placement scheme addressing emergency labour market shortages in buildings history and photography is running well. The buildings history placements concluded successfully in December and a variation to offer four more 6-month placements in this field was agreed. These will start in June/July.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

### **6575 Bursaries for Mst in Building History 2012-2014**

A bursary fund was established to defray fees and other expenses of postgraduate students studying the MSt in Building History at the University of Cambridge. Awards are offered competitively to students subject to agreed criteria, and disbursements are in instalments over two years. The fund was set up in acknowledgement of the very real financial difficulties and disincentives faced by a substantial proportion of eligible applicants.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** During summer 2012 a total of fourteen offers of places on the MSt in Building History were accepted. Eleven applications for bursaries were received, and nine bursaries were initially offered, totalling £20K (this figure reflects the original estimate for the Bursary fund). The increase in the number of awards, as compared with 2011-13, reflects nearly 20% higher overall scores achieved by Cohort 2 students against the criteria applied, and even with the full extent of the originally anticipated bursary fund the sums awarded were on average less than 60% of the value of those offered to Cohort 1 students.

**Date of completion:** September 2014.

**6590 Conservation labour market intelligence 2012-2013**

The aim of this project has been to gather, analyse and interpret labour market intelligence for the conservation sector in the financial year 2012-13. The reasoning behind this was to get solid data that could help to improve understanding of the needs and current state of employment for the conservation/restoration profession.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** ICON has commissioned a comprehensive study of the conservation/restoration sector: EH is co-funding the project together with Arts Council England and the HLF.

- The objectives of the project were:
- to set out, for the first time in over 10 years, a profile of the workforce;
- to gather and interpret information on training needs, skills shortages and skills gaps;
- to gather and interpret details of the nature and extent of the conservation sector; including accurate employment figures in different specialisms (defined sectorally and by post title);
- to gather and interpret information on professional roles including potential recruitment and career progression difficulties;
- to identify potential barriers to employment;
- and to disseminate the results of this work to the cultural heritage sector and the conservation profession

The first draft of the report has been circulated and the final version is intended for completion by the end of April.

**Date of completion:** April 2013.

## ACTIVITY 2E2: CAPACITY LOSS IN LOCAL AUTHORITIES

### Context

Economic pressures are intensifying on Local Authorities, the most important organisations responsible for the care of our historic environment. Local Authority historic environment capacity is closely linked to the level of local political support. Resources are under exceptional strain and restructuring and capacity reduction is a reality and likely to accelerate. While options are limited, partnership working is vital to ensure that the necessary expertise is available to local authorities and that it is sufficient to deal not just

with the day-to-day planning casework but also with pro-active plan-making and information gathering so that the sector is prepared for the upswing in economic activity when it comes.

**Activity Lead:** Owain Lloyd-James, Historic Environment Intelligence Analyst (Local Government Impacts) ([Owain.lloyd-james@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:Owain.lloyd-james@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £440k

### Protection Result 2E2.1: Sufficient expertise and capacity to enable Local Authorities to undertake their responsibilities within NPPF

#### **6167 Evaluating the Historic Environment Resource in Store**

Local authority archives and repositories for archaeological archives recovered as part of the planning process and held in trust for the nation are under pressure within local authorities. This project, in partnership with the Society of Museum Archaeologists and FAME, will (among other things) update the current picture of museums accepting and holding archaeological material, what staff capacity exists, examine who uses them and for what, and what material cannot currently be deposited.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** The report has been produced in a web-accessible pdf format and is available through the [SMA website](#). The final stage of the project was an open meeting to discuss the recommendations presented in the report. That meeting took place in Birmingham on the 7th March 2013 and was attended by over 100 people from across the sector. The final payment has been made and the project is now closed.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

#### **6674 Historic Environment: Local Authority Capacity (HELAC)**

To respond to intense pressures on non-statutory heritage functions within local authorities, key stakeholders are exploring with authorities how to retain a focus on strategic heritage outcomes, reduce unnecessary bureaucracy and process, pool resources across public bodies and engage civic societies more effectively. HELAC represents a partnership initiative with English Heritage and the Local Government Association being joined by the Association of Local Government Archaeological Officers, the Institute of Historic Building Conservation and the Planning Officers Society.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** This project remains the subject of discussion between the partner organisations. It still remains the intention for a project proposal to be developed early in the financial year.

## Protection Result 2E2.2: Clear, objective presentation of the impact of capacity-loss

### 6295 Collection and analysis of sector intelligence

This programme undertakes surveys of capacity within local authorities and other agencies to ensure that trends are captured and specific issues can be flagged up for activity.

### 6570 Local Authority Capacity Review (IHBC)

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Data has been collected, analysed and [published](#). Project complete September 2012.

**Date of completion:** September 2012.

### 6571 Local Authority Capacity Review (ALGAO)

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Data has been collected, analysed and [published](#). Project complete September 2012.

**Date of completion:** September 2012.

## Protection Result 2E2.4: Justified capacity-building support for Local Authorities

### Enhancing Local Government HE capacity by embedding staff capacity

Capacity-building by supporting individual Local Authorities with EH start up funding for additional historic environment posts. Four projects are running in Dartmoor NP; Wiltshire; Durham and Shropshire.

#### 4953 Historic Environment Record Officer: Dartmoor

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Project is running to schedule.

#### 5464 Historic Environment Record Data Manager: Wiltshire

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Project is running to schedule.

#### 5602 Historic Environment Record Officer: Durham

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Project is running to schedule.

#### 5948 Shropshire Council Principal Archaeologist

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Project is running to schedule.

Facing page: Testing of solid brick walls and the thermal conductivity tests of the brick samples (2A2). Photo © English Heritage.







## **MEASURE 3. RECOGNITION AND IDENTIFICATION OF THE POTENTIAL RESOURCE**

There are considerable areas of the country where even basic identification of what heritage we have is poor and thus where there is a real risk of losing nationally significant landscapes and assets before we even know what is at risk. This is, unsurprisingly, true more of buried archaeology than it is of standing structures, especially for hard-to-access landscapes, those in remote uplands, deeply buried within or under glacial gravels, hidden in subterranean locales, inundated in marsh or wetlands, or submerged below the seas. Such survey is costly and will only be undertaken in areas subject to major change (known or anticipated). All Activities are grouped under Topic 3A: Survey and Identification.

Recognition and identification of the resource comprises the following five Activities:

- 3A1 UNKNOWN MARINE ASSETS AND LANDSCAPES
- 3A2 UNKNOWN COASTAL ASSETS AND LANDSCAPES
- 3A3 DEEPLY BURIED/SUBTERRANEAN PLEISTOCENE AND EARLY HOLOCENE ARCHAEOLOGY
- 3A4 IDENTIFICATION OF TERRESTRIAL ASSETS VIA NON-INTRUSIVE SURVEY
- 3A5 IDENTIFICATION OF WETLAND/WATERLOGGED SITES

The four year allocation of resource (both staff and funding) for this measure for 2011-2015 is **£4.437M**

Facing page: A view south-east to the Lune Valley and beyond into the Howgill Fells. The National Archaeological Identification Survey Pilot 1 (Lakes, Dales and Arnside) (3A4). Photo by Dave MacLeod, © English Heritage.

## ACTIVITY 3AI: UNKNOWN MARINE ASSETS AND LANDSCAPES

### Context

We know very little about marine heritage assets: continued survey and mapping will provide an essential basis for identifying assets worthy of protection. Action will include seabed mapping, historic seascape characterisation and establishing cost-effective ways of assessing potential for discoveries within areas marked for development and exploitation.

**Activity Lead:** Ian Oxley, Historic Environment Intelligence Analyst (Marine Impacts) ([ian.oxley@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:ian.oxley@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £600k

### Protection Result 3AI.1: Appropriately mapped and characterised marine historic environment

#### 3362 Reassessment of archaeological potential of continental shelves

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** One out of three scheduled academic publications derived from the research has been published and the remainder are in press. The remaining resource was moved from 2012 to 2013 and will be re-assigned within the Activity.

#### National coverage by Historic Seascapes Characterisation

English Heritage's programme of implementing historic seascape characterisation nationally is well advanced (see <http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/professional/research/landscapes-and-areas/characterisation/historic-seascape-character/>). The final three projects that will complete coverage of characterisations of England's Territorial seabed and the UK Controlled Waters adjacent are underway.

#### 6228 HSC East Yorkshire to Norfolk

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Inception meeting and Steering Group meetings held, pilot characterisation underway, flyer in preparation, main characterisation started. Website set-up - <http://www.ncl.ac.uk/historical/research/project/4302>

**Date of completion:** To report in late May 2013.

#### 6229 HSC Thames Estuary

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Inception and Steering Group meetings held. Slightly behind schedule mainly due to data supply issues. Trial area characterisation underway.

**Date of completion:** To report in January 2014.

#### 6230 HSC South West

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Inception and first Steering Group meetings held. Trial area characterisation completed. Flyer produced. Characterisation of full project area underway. Draft report received.

**Date of completion:** To report late August 2013.

**6298 EH curation for the HSC national database**

Internal project to ensure data management of national HSC database can meet the supply, retrieval and updating demands required for HSC to fulfil its roles.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** PD received, reviewed and edits to be incorporated.

**Date of completion:** End 2014.

**Developing understanding of submerged palaeoenvironments**

One area of considerable recent development is in assessing the character and scale of England's submerged ancient landscapes. Inundated between 18,000 and c 5,000 years ago, these very considerable landmasses have considerable but poorly understood potential for archaeological remains and even sites. The project will comprise an audit of current knowledge, data curation/mapping, development of settlement models, and enabling updating and access to information.

**6231 Audit of current state of knowledge of submerged palaeolandscapes and sites**

The Audit of Current State of Knowledge of Submerged Palaeolandscapes and Sites project brings together the results of all the available surveys which have been conducted in recent years which make a contribution to our knowledge of this field, to improve access to data and interpretations, provide an overview of our understanding of submerged landscapes and sites which have been identified, highlight areas for possible future investigation, and to develop assessment and interpretation methodologies.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Report received. EH comments being compiled.

**Date of completion:** Summer 2013.

**6232 Marine data management and enhancement**

Compile and curate marine data from past projects.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** PD received for Heritage Data Management elements. Subsequent re-structuring and awaited identification of additional elements has delayed full implementation. Unused resource moved from 2012 to 2013.

**Date of completion:** End 2014.

**6593 Expert meeting to add social context to understanding of submerged landscapes**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Contract let, meeting planning underway.

**Date of completion:** Autumn 2013.

**6440 Assessment of Early Ships and Boats**

One way of exploring expansion of the designation base (and you can find out more about our Designated Wrecks from <http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/caring/listing/protected-wreck-sites/>) is to undertake a thematic approach to the resource. Early ships and boats (i.e. those dating from the earliest times to about 1840) are recommended as such a theme on account of their special technological, historical and human interest.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Report produced and circulated. Informing designation assessment planning including current programme to assess sites in the North East.

**6522 Unknown marine assets and landscapes: Liverpool Bay**

This project examines the cost effective use of existing and new geophysical survey data to map and characterise unknown marine assets and landscapes in the approaches to Liverpool. The proposed study area has very high archaeological potential in terms of both historic shipwrecks and submerged prehistory but has received little archaeological attention in the past.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Stage 1 produced and EH comments returned in mid-March. Stage 2 is due to be produced in mid-May. Project is five months behind schedule due to contractor staff appointment delays, staff availability, and data supply issues.

**Date of completion:** January 2014.

**6655 Strategic Assessment of Submarines in English Waters**

The Aim of the study is to inform a policy on future designation approaches by identifying the best examples of submarines in England within the Territorial Sea.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Contract let and data gathering underway. Inception meeting held.

**Date of completion:** August/September 2013.



The Wreck of the Hans Egede on the foreshore at Cliffe, Kent (3A2). Photo by Derek Kendall, © English Heritage.

## ACTIVITY 3A2: UNKNOWN COASTAL ASSETS AND LANDSCAPES

### Context

Sea level change, erosion and inundation will have a major impact on coastal heritage. Action will involve completion of our Rapid Coastal Zone Assessment Surveys, follow-up designation or local listing, enhancement of management datasets (e.g. HERs) and establishment of protection strategies for significant assets. Data will inform Shoreline Management Plans as well as local and strategic development (see also 2D2, 2D3).

**Activity Lead:** Peter Murphy, Historic Environment Intelligence Officer (Climatic Changes) ([peter.murphy@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:peter.murphy@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £636k

### Protection Result 3A2.1: Coastal heritage integrated into coastal management strategies

#### **1201 Wootton Quarr survey**

Publication of survey and excavation results.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Report published: Tomalin, D., Loader, R.D., and Scaife, R.G. 2012. Coastal Archaeology in a Dynamic Environment. British Archaeological Reports British Series 568.

**Date of completion:** 2012.

#### **5301 Severn bankside and foreshore rapid survey**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** On 27 June 2012 we were informed that the article has been accepted and is now in press; the editor has publication grant application in hand.

**Date of completion:** 2012.

#### **5919 National thematic survey of Hulks**

This project aimed to assess the nature, character, distribution and significance of historic hulk assemblages (i.e. grounded/abandoned maritime or riverine vessels) in England to provide a context for applications for designation and for local management.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Draft final report received. MoLA working through EH comments before delivery of final report.

**Date of completion:** April 2013.

### 6134 Essex Historic Marsh Grazing Survey

As a distinctive and complex historic environment, coastal grazing marshes are a major heritage asset, contributing to the special landscape character of many parts of the English coast, and of the Essex coast in particular. They are also sensitive to change; once ubiquitous around the Essex coast, enormous losses took place in the second half of the 20th Century (approximately 72% lost since the 1930s) largely as a result of agricultural improvement. By the end of the 1990s it was estimated that there were around 6500 hectares of surviving coastal grazing marsh in the county, which represents some 5.5% of the national resource. This project will undertake a desk-based survey and interpretation of the surviving historic coastal grazing marshes of Essex to provide assessment of the heritage significance and vulnerability which will operate effectively at scales appropriate to Shoreline Management Plans. The project will be implemented by Essex County Council Historic Environment Branch.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Monitoring report for September 2012 indicates project is 8 weeks behind schedule, due to delays caused by staff involvement in the Olympic Mountain Bike venue.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

### Rapid Coastal Zone Assessment Surveys

For much of the 20th century coastal management was focused on defence. More recently, the emphasis has shifted towards risk management, long-term sustainability and adaptation, in the light of current climate change projections (Defra 2010; McInnes 2008). The coastal historic environment was under-investigated and records in the National Monuments Record (NMR) did not provide an adequate evidence base for responding to new policies. Consequently, English Heritage initiated the national RCZAS programme. RCZAS comprise:

Phase 1 (Desk-Based Assessment) draws on data from aerial photographs, lidar, historic maps and charts, the local authority Historic Environment Records (HERs), the NMR, and other sources.

Phase 2 (Field Assessment) comprises a rapid walk-over survey, designed to verify records from Phase 1, locate and characterise site types not visible from the air, and assess significance and vulnerability. In some cases additional work, especially scientific dating, has been necessary to characterise sites fully. [Rapid Coastal Zone Assessment Survey programme](#)

### 3729 Yorkshire and Lincolnshire RCZAS Phase 3

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Individual chapters of the report on ports, quarry sites and mere sites have been submitted for EH comment and will be drawn together as a single final report.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

### 3885 Severn RCZAS

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Project report completed. It includes a section entitled 'Assessment of distribution, preservation, potential and threat' (pp. 113-132) which will provide a basis for future historic asset management.

**Date of completion:** February 2013.

### 4548 North West RCZAS Phase 2

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Due for completion in June 2013. A delay in completion has proved necessary in order to take account of radiocarbon dating. The draft report not including these results has already been commented on by EH.

**Date of completion:** June 2013.



**6106 South East RCZAS Phase I**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Phase I report completed. The Phase I report includes an outline PD for the first part of Phase 2, which will not be commissioned within the present round of the NHPP. Phase 2 will assess the distribution of historic assets and their management.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

**6109 Rescue recording of an eroding inter-tidal peat bed at Low Hauxley, Northumberland**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Archaeological Research Services has provided a report on footprints and wood of late Mesolithic date. Funding for site management has been obtained from the HLF.

**Date of completion:** February 2013.

**6046 and 6673 Devon to Hampshire NMP and RCZAS Phase I**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** These projects were commissioned in February 2013, with start dates from April 2013 onwards and a completion date of June 2015. Once work is underway individual reports for each project will be supplied for the NHPP Annual Report.

**Date of completion:** June 2015.



The Pinnacles and Old Harry, Dorset coast. Desk Based Assessment phases for the Rapid Coastal Assessment Surveys in Dorset and South Devon. Photo by Damian Grady, © English Heritage.

## ACTIVITY 3A3: DEEPLY BURIED/SUBTERRANEAN PLEISTOCENE AND EARLY HOLOCENE ARCHAEOLOGY

### Context

Very ancient sites of human activity (e.g. Boxgrove, Happisburgh) are internationally significant. Often deeply buried, and found most often by chance (by quarrying or coastal erosion for example), they are at significant risk of destruction. Action will include developing models of high potential, techniques for location and cost-effective recording, and developing

partnerships with industry and other agencies to ensure reporting of chance finds.

**Activity Lead:** Jonathan Last, Landscape Strategy Manager ([jonathan.last@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:jonathan.last@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £463k

### Protection Result 3A3.1: Priorities for survey and assessment of Palaeolithic and Mesolithic heritage

#### **Assessing and synthesising current knowledge of Palaeolithic and Mesolithic archaeology in order to establish conservation priorities**

These projects aim to collate and assess our understanding of the distribution, character and significance of Palaeolithic and Mesolithic activity in England (covering most of the last 800,000 years) to aid management of the resource, assess current approaches and techniques, and develop conservation priorities. This will be achieved through an academic synthesis of 10 years of ALSF-funded work on Palaeolithic sites and deposits, and the development of a new research and conservation framework for the Mesolithic.

#### **5458 Review of Palaeolithic Research: landscapes and seascapes**

Review by expert team of ALSF work on the terrestrial Palaeolithic to appraise results (including unfinished elements of NIAN project), produce synthesis, assess best practice in methodologies for prospection/ assessment, review remote sensing techniques and define areas where knowledge of deposits and their potential is inadequate. Leading to a synthetic publication ('Lost Landscapes of Palaeolithic Britain') detailed research/conservation priorities linked to the Palaeolithic research framework, strategy to complete NIAN assessment of quarries, and updated Wymer database.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project is behind schedule but the draft text has now been produced and circulated, and a revised timetable submitted.

**Date of completion:** August 2013.

#### **6233 Mesolithic Research Framework**

Develop new research and conservation framework to define current knowledge and priorities for the Mesolithic; and provide a forum for sector-wide thinking and raising awareness of this overlooked period.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project is slightly behind schedule. The [first consultation](#) stage (on the draft resource assessment) finished in September. The framework document has now been drafted and will go out for consultation shortly.

**Date of completion:** August 2013.

**1119 North Peak ESA**

Upland survey work mainly related to peat erosion and Mesolithic sites.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The landscape management web pages were submitted to EH in July. They were reviewed and comments returned. Although there has been some slippage, partly due to the receipt of new text from one of the contributors, a draft of the major paper has now been circulated for specialist comment. Submission to EH expected by June 2013.

**Date of completion:** June 2013.

**2203 Early Mesolithic in the Vale of Pickering**

Landscape-scale survey contextualising Star Carr excavation.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** No recent news. Since there are no payments attached we remain dependent on the authors finding time to complete the text. Possible solutions will be discussed with the University of York during 2013.

**Date of completion:** Unknown.

**2738 Upper Palaeolithic/Mesolithic Survey**

Four-county pilot GIS database of chance finds and excavations based on Roger Jacobi's archive.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The main publication (an article intended for PPS) has been submitted for peer review. Thesaurus terms have been submitted to EH Data Standards. The Colonisation of Britain database and Jacobi Archive data have been sent to the ADS. Two trials of the utility of the data have been carried out with PhD students at the Universities of Leicester and Manchester. Final submission to EH and journals is awaiting finalisation of details of location of data with ADS and its means of being accessed.

**Date of completion:** June 2013.

**3862 North East Yorkshire Mesolithic**

Survey and modelling of Mesolithic sites in the North York Moors and the Tees valley.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Geophysical survey (by Durham University) has taken place in the field at Goldsborough (near Whitby) identified during previous stages of the project. Fieldwalking has also been undertaken though (due to constraints imposed by the landowner) not as extensively as had originally been planned. The finds are currently being processed. Plotting the fieldwalking results against the geophysical survey will enable comparison of the results from the different investigative methods. Further fieldwork (shovel pitting and trial excavation) took place in March 2013.

**Date of completion:** November 2013.

**6671 Review of Mesolithic animal bones from Southern England**

This project will produce a synthetic review of records of Mesolithic vertebrate remains (animal bones and teeth) from the south of England; considering extent and nature of the dataset, its interpretation potential, and priorities for future research. This review will assist curators, project managers and specialists planning for the potential recovery of, or working with, Mesolithic faunal material from southern England, and adjoining regions.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Literature Survey and Data Gathering tasks are all underway or completed, with only a few outstanding requests for information. Data Entry is also progressing. While more sites have been identified than anticipated, most do not have very much zooarchaeological information, so should not lead to the project over-running. However, other work priorities in Feb/March 2013 and April 2013 may lead to a slight delay in completion.

**Date of completion:** June 2013.

## Protection Result 3A3.2: Mechanisms for protecting or mitigating loss of deeply buried (including coastal) Pleistocene and Early Holocene deposits

### 2898 Boxgrove raised beach mapping

Geoarchaeological characterisation of 26km 0.5m-year raised beach formation which contained hominin remains.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The author has submitted a hard copy of the Raised Beach Mapping Project volume but the timetable for publication has yet to be established.

**Date of completion:** Unknown.

### 3495 The Lower and Middle Palaeolithic occupation of the Middle and Lower Trent catchment

A study of the Palaeolithic archive and its Quaternary and geomorphological context.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The volume is in press with Oxbow.

**Date of completion:** February 2014.

### 5725 Evaluating the geoarchaeological resource in the Lower Severn Valley

Mapping and geoarchaeological testing of terrace gravels containing palaeoenvironmental and artefactual evidence. A programme of mapping, modelling and dating was undertaken across two main study areas which began to redress the historic lack of geoarchaeological and palaeoenvironmental research in the Lower Severn. The geomorphological mapping and collated data provide essential background information for exploring and effectively managing the associated cultural landscape, the prehistoric and Roman aspects of which are 'masked' by alluvium across wide areas of the valley floor.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** An article entitled 'Delivering the benefits of Aggregates Levy Sustainability Funded Research on river valley archaeological sites in the Severn-Wye catchment, UK has been published in *Historic Environment Policy and Practice* (Oct 2012). Other articles are earmarked for the next three financial years.

**Date of completion:** Unknown.

### 6234 and 6441 Coastal exposures – survey and monitoring

Recent work on the Norfolk coast has located internationally significant Lower Palaeolithic remains in the Cromer Forest-Bed Formation. This programme will support survey (6234) and monitoring (6441) of eroding coastal deposits with Forest-Bed exposures to enhance understanding, assess threat, and develop a deposit model for integration into HERs.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** 6234 The project is on schedule. Pilot fieldwork (coring, geophysical survey, diving) was undertaken over summer 2012 and informed an updated project design for further work in 2013.

6441 A 'fossil roadshow' was held in Cromer in October and the digital recording of R.G. West's archive is progressing.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

### 6235 Development Area Pleistocene project

Exemplary projects in key area under development/extraction pressure to provide baseline understanding (map deposits and quantify resource), assess potential and threat, test/improve methodologies (for remote sensing, artefact retrieval) and integrate deposit models into HERs.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Two projects have been commissioned (6237 and 6640) – see below.

**Date of completion:** See below.

**6637 Stour Basin Palaeolithic project**

The project is focused on the Palaeolithic resource of the Stour Basin of north-east Kent, parts of which are under high development pressure, and aims to develop a predictive model identifying areas of high Palaeolithic potential, provide an improved dating framework and deposit model for river terrace and "Head/Brickearth" deposits, including testing the use of Ground Penetrating Radar, and to facilitate the curatorial response to development proposals.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project is underway.

**Date of completion:** December 2014.

**6640 The Lower Palaeolithic in the East Midlands: River Bytham, Brooksby Quarry, Leicestershire**

The project aims to investigate the deeply buried early Middle Pleistocene Brooksby Deposits from an incised channel of the lost river Bytham using Electrical Resistivity Tomography (ERT) survey, with follow up borehole sampling and trial trenching.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project has just commenced.

**Date of completion:** November 2013.

## Protection Result 3A3.4: Wider voluntary reporting of Palaeolithic and Mesolithic artefact finds

**6237 Guidance and training on recognition of Palaeolithic and Mesolithic archaeology**

This programme will take existing Palaeolithic guidance to external partners (industry, coastal communities, agencies etc.), develop Mesolithic artefact recognition sheets and provide training seminars on specific Pleistocene and early Holocene themes for curators/contractors and other heritage professionals.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This will be taken forward once 5458 has reported. Note that some outreach/guidance work will also be incorporated into the final stage of project 5695 (Chard Junction Quarry).

**Date of completion:** Unknown.

## ACTIVITY 3A4: IDENTIFICATION OF TERRESTRIAL ASSETS VIA NON-INTRUSIVE SURVEY

### Context

Sites of national significance continue to be discovered via aerial survey and other non-intrusive detection methods. As of 2010 c. 42% of England has been surveyed for heritage assets using aerial photographs, so much still remains to be examined properly. Follow-up ground-based analysis and survey in particularly significant or threatened locations will lead on to candidates for local or national designation. Future activity will focus on designated landscapes (National parks, Areas of Outstanding Natural Beauty etc.), where

threat from agricultural and forestry intensification is greatest, or where substantial gaps in our knowledge exist.

**Activity Leads:** Helen Winton, Aerial Investigation and Mapping Manager ([helen.winton@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:helen.winton@english-heritage.org.uk)); Dave Went, Assessment Team (North) Manager ([dave.went@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:dave.went@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £2.398M

### Protection Result 3A4.1: Identification of unknown assets from aerial reconnaissance

#### **Aerial reconnaissance programme**

This ongoing programme assists local authorities in capturing historic environment data from aerial photography. Flights are targeted on high potential areas which are also poorly understood and/or threatened.

As well as our own national flying programme, English Heritage is supporting local fliers in Hereford, Cornwall, Shropshire and Essex.

#### **5579 Shropshire Aerial Survey**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The last few hours of flying were completed and remaining images, catalogue and report expected imminently.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

#### **5894 Essex online aerial survey**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Many cropmark sites were discovered using online sources (such as Google Earth). Air photo mapping and HER records were updated for thirty-four 1:10,000 OS map sheets, located in Uttlesford and Epping. The project established an effective method and demonstrated that even in an area that had been previously assessed (through NMP and aerial reconnaissance) numerous unknown historic assets can be recorded when suitable online aerial photographs are available.

**Date of completion:** April 2012.

#### **6299 Aerial reconnaissance (National)**

National aerial reconnaissance programme discovering and recording sites visible as cropmarks, soilmarks and earthworks. (Will be undertaken in tandem with recording, monitoring and illustrative work).

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** A project design was completed and approved for reconnaissance and recording. This year had one of the worst summers for aerial reconnaissance so opportunities for cropmark discovery were limited. A revised reconnaissance recording method was set up and trialled. As part of this, 490 newly discovered archaeological sites, from various recent years, were recorded in the National Record of the Historic Environment (in the NRHE AMIE database available via PastScape website). Earthwork photography and Heritage At Risk targets will be prioritised next year.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

**Aerial reconnaissance (local)**

Local aerial reconnaissance programmes discovering and recording sites visible as cropmarks, soilmarks and earthworks. (Will be undertaken in tandem with recording, monitoring and illustrative work).

**Progress:** Following a call for proposals, four new projects were initiated:

6452 Essex 2012-13

6461 Shropshire 2012-13

6462 Herefordshire 2012-13

6463 Cornwall 2012-13

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** All these projects have had few opportunities to fly due to poor weather and all have had to identify alternative aircraft suppliers. Most projects will concentrate on earthwork or HAR targets over the winter.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

## Protection Result 3A4.2: Identification and mapping of assets from aerial photograph/lidar mapping to provide base level protection

**National Mapping Programme**

This programme acts as an umbrella for a range of aerial survey interpretation projects, identifying and transcribing previously unrecorded, or poorly recorded, archaeological landscapes for the benefit of future management. Each project covers significant areas (usually 200 or more square kilometres) based on strategic need and/or significant gaps in understanding. Information on each National Mapping Programme project can be found at: <http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/professional/research/landscapes-and-areas/national-mapping-programme/>

A Morphe project planning note on air photo mapping projects was issued. 10 NMP project proposals were received after a Call for Proposals through the NHPCP. The proposals were reviewed and the necessary project designs were commissioned.

**Ongoing projects:****3908 The landscape of the Yorkshire henges**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Interpretation and mapping for 586km<sup>2</sup> was completed. The report will be accessible on line later in April. The air photo mapping focused mainly on the Southern Magnesian Limestone belt in the county of North Yorkshire. This area was surveyed using air photographs and lidar derived images. New monument records were created (in the NRHE AMIE database available via Pastscape website) for 1626 monuments or monument groups and a further 182 existing monument records were amended or enhanced. The summary report will be made available via the English Heritage website.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

**4918 North Gloucestershire Cotswolds**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** The project mapped and interpreted 1430 previously unrecorded heritage assets and amended 618 existing records. The mapping and monument records are available for research and planning purposes through the Gloucestershire HER and the English Heritage Archive and National Record of the Historic Environment. A report highlighting the main themes emerging from the project results is available online at <http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/professional/research/landscapes-and-areas/national-mapping-programme/north-gloucestershire-cotswolds-nmp/>

**Date of completion:** June 2012.

### 5313 Thetford, Norwich and A11 corridor Growth Areas

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Mapping and recording into the HER is complete for the whole project. Work began on the final report on the A11 corridor.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

### 5626 Marden environs, Vale of Pewsey, Wiltshire

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Work was deferred on this project due to other priorities. The project report will be completed in early FY 2013/14.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

### 5648 South Lincolnshire fenland lidar processing

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** This was a follow-up to an earlier APS project that processed Environment Agency lidar data to produce more user friendly jpeg imagery than the Environment Agency standard. The data was processed to produce imagery that emphasised the subtle changes in height in the Fenland area that help in the recognition of the palaeotopography and associated potential settlement etc. The project produced both mosaics of the whole area as well as individual tiles. The key product of the project was the imagery to allow analysis by future users, rather than a detailed analysis of the data to be found within the imagery, but some key findings were also recorded.

The project was undertaken to time and budget. All stakeholders, English Heritage, Environment Agency, Lincolnshire County Council Historic Environment Record, Heritage Trust of Lincolnshire, have been notified of the completion and have copies of the report.

**Date of completion:** May 2012.

### 5868 South Downs National Park Beachy Head to Ouse Valley

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project was revised, due to staff loss, and a reduced area agreed with stakeholders. The mapping and recording for the revised project area was completed and covered 118 square kilometres. This covered downland to the east of Lewes, the Ouse Valley below Lewes, a coastal strip between Newhaven and Eastbourne, the Cuckmere Valley up to Berwick, and downland stretching north-west from Beachy Head to Wilmington. The project created 655 monument records and amended details for 265 in the National Record of the Historic Environment (in the NRHE AMIE database available via PastScape website).

**Date of completion:** April 2013.

### 5950 Hampshire Downland

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** All mapping and recording was completed for 400 square kilometres and the data cleaned in preparation for writing the final project report, the first draft of which will be submitted by the end of April to EH for comment. A copy of the archive (AutoCAD maps, GIS shapefiles and copies of the data) has been sent to EH.

**Date of completion:** April 2013.



### 6053 South East Warwickshire and Cotswolds Higher Level Stewardship Target Areas

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Work resumed after completion of the Turning The Plough 2 project (NHPP 2D1). The project end date was revised due to staff loss. The interpretation and mapping phase is on course to complete by the end of April and 630 square kilometres (from a total of 670) are complete. This year 471 monument records were added and 261 amended in the NRHE AMIE database bringing the project totals to 645 new records and 334 amended. Results include extensive areas of medieval/post-medieval ridge and furrow and numerous examples of medieval settlement. Where the medieval earthworks have been ploughed level there is evidence of earlier, later prehistoric and roman, settlement revealed as cropmarks. Work will begin on a report in April and May 2013.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

### 6083 North Devon AONB

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** All mapping and monument recording was completed in the Devon Historic Environment Record. Over 1100 archaeological features were transcribed during the project, of which approximately 80% were previously unrecorded. Of particular significance are a probable southern extension of the iconic North Devon hillfort of Clovelly Dykes, a newly recorded possible pit alignment and possible civil war earthworks. A key outcome is a greater understanding of the extent and character of the militarised landscape on the north Devon coast in the Second World War, which has an international dimension. Project results are available from the Devon HER and the report will be available on the English Heritage web pages.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.



The North Devon AONB National Mapping Programme project: photo: Looking across the rivers Torridge and Taw towards Braunton Burrows and Northam Burrows in the North Devon AONB. Photo by Damian Grady, © English Heritage.



Chalk Downlands and Hull Valley National Mapping Programme project: Earthworks associated with the post medieval garden at Risby Hall mapped from aerial photographs during the project. Photo by Matthew Oakey, © English Heritage.

### 6438 Hull valley and chalk lowlands

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** The project report was completed in December and a note submitted to Research News in March. A total area of 300km<sup>2</sup> was mapped resulting in the creation of 794 monument records and amendments to 135 records in the NRHE AMIE database available via the PastScape website. The report will be available on line later in April. For an intensively cultivated landscape, the project has highlighted unexpected prehistoric survivals including a section of multiple-banked boundary, and assessed 48 scheduled sites. Information on relevant sites will be passed to the English Heritage Designation and Heritage at Risk Teams.

**Date of completion:** December 2012.

### 6445 North York Moors phase 2

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The report is in final edit stage, and all that remains to do is an OASIS report and one site to be forwarded for scheduling consideration. The project mapped 325 square kilometres over four landscape blocks. 451 new monument records were created and 239 were enhanced in the NRHE AMIE database available via the PastScape website. The report will be available online later in April.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

### **6600-6601 NMP Mapping – Wild Purbeck Dorset AONB**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** A project design was commissioned from Cornwall Council Historic Environment Service for a two stage project to interpret and map the archaeological landscape of Wild Purbeck from aerial photographs. Stage 1, covering 203 sq km, and a schedule for undertaking Stage 2 (223 sq km) is to be agreed with English Heritage at a later date. The project will assess the archaeological resource of the Wild Purbeck Nature Improvement Area (WPNIA) in southeast Dorset. Much of the NIA lies within the eastern part of the Dorset AONB (Area of Outstanding Natural Beauty). The project is intended principally as a curatorial tool. By enhancing the HER, and through an analytical report, the results will inform strategic approaches to conservation, facilitate the management of agri-environment schemes and other land use management issues. On a wider level the project will inform and enhance the presentation of the historic environment of a landscape offering great opportunities for public access and enjoyment. The project will start in March 2014 on completion of the NMP component of the SWRCZAS Dorset (NHPP 3A2 project number 6673).

**Date of completion:** Stage 1 December 2014, Stage 2 May 2015.

### **6613 NMP Mapping – Staffordshire Eastern River Confluences**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** A project design was commissioned from Archaeological Research Services for a two stage project to interpret and map the archaeological landscape of mineral producing areas of Staffordshire. Stage 1 (265 sq km) will examine the eastern river confluences and a schedule for stage 2 will be agreed later. The project will improve the management and understanding of the historic environment of Staffordshire by enhancing the HER. Stage 1 includes Abbots Bromley environs, the Weaver Hills and the Kidsgrove and Talke – all areas with key mineral deposits under existing or potential new mineral schemes, while the area north of Gnosall will be used to assess the potential for NMP methods to improve understanding of less well studied areas of the county. The project began on 5th March.

**Date of completion:** Stage 1 March 2014, Stage 2 Autumn 2014.

### **6626 NMP Mapping – Pennine Dales Fringe air photo and lidar mapping**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** A project design was commissioned from Alison Deegan for air photo and lidar mapping, analysis and recording of 179 square kilometres. The project area is in Harrogate District, North Yorkshire. It lies mainly within Natural England's Pennine Dales Fringe Natural Character Area (NCA), but also takes in a small part of the Yorkshire Dales NCA.iii. It also covers part of the Nidderdale Area of Outstanding Natural Beauty (AONB). This project area is a "transitional landscape" between the upland and moorland areas of the Yorkshire Dales to the west and the arable land to the east. The main products of this project will be monument depictions in GIS, associated National Record for the Historic Environment (NRHE) monument records, and an end of project report. The project will start in October 2014 on completion of the NMP component of the Cumbrian Minerals Assessment (NHPP Activity 2D4, project 6490).

**Date of completion:** September 2014.

### **6634 NMP Mapping – East and mid Devon river catchments**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** A project design was commissioned, from Devon County Council Historic Environment Team and AC archaeology, for aerial photograph interpretive survey in Mid and East Devon, examining parts of the catchments of the Exe, Culm and Clyst rivers, including part of the East Devon AONB and the Blackdown Hills AONB. The two stages cover areas of 183 and 225 square kilometres. The archaeology in these areas is vulnerable to agricultural threats and from resource protection initiatives (Catchment Sensitive Farming and related programmes), regional housing and development growth-point targets. The project will provide base line heritage protection by enhancing the HER and through an analytical report. The project will start in March 2014 on completion of the NMP component of the SWRCZAS Devon (NHPP 3A2 project number 6046).

**Date of completion:** Stage 1 March 2015, Stage 2 Autumn 2015.

**6636 NMP Mapping – South Suffolk - Ipswich and Shotley Peninsula****Status:** ●

**Progress:** A project design was commissioned from Suffolk County Council and Essex County Council for a two stage project to assess and digitally map, to NMP standard, all archaeology visible on available aerial photographic sources in an area located to the west of Ipswich, Suffolk. Stage 1 covers an area of 51 square km to the west and north of Ipswich and along the A14 to Stowmarket which follows a river valley. Block 2 would cover an area of 54 square km to complete NMP cover of the Shotley Peninsula. This area lacks basic identification of heritage assets, but is a growth point and is under increasingly strategic development pressures. The Regional Research Agenda identified a need for further NMP work in East Anglia. The project will provide base line heritage protection by enhancing the HER and through an analytical report.

**Date of completion:** Stage 1 February 2014.**6642 NMP Mapping – Lothingland, Greater Lowestoft and North Suffolk Coast and Heaths AONB****Status:** ●

**Progress:** A project design was commissioned from Norfolk County Council Historic Environment Service to enhance our understanding and protection of the historic environment of the Suffolk portion of Lothingland, the Greater Lowestoft area and the northern portion of the Suffolk Coast and Heaths AONB. Norfolk County Council and Suffolk County Council are also making “in-kind” contributions. The project will identify, map, interpret and record archaeological sites visible within this area utilising all of the available aerial photographs and remote sensing data. Dissemination of results will be primarily through the Suffolk Historic Environment Record and an archaeological report.

**Date of completion:** July 2014.

## Protection Result 3A4.3: Integrated survey of target landscapes and assets

**Intensive field surveys**

Particular landscapes or themes have been supported for more intensive, multi-disciplinary field-based surveys, often at local authority request either because remote sensing has not provided sufficiently clear results, or because of particular conservation needs. Projects under way or near completion are listed below. These include two National Archaeological Investigative Survey (NAIS) pilot projects designed to test and refine methods of archaeological recognition, survey and analysis in upland and lowland landscapes.

**2975 Lake District National Park survey****Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Completion signalled by publication of Quartermaine and Leech 2012 ‘Cairns, Fields and Cultivation: archaeological landscapes of the Lake District uplands’ Oxbow.

**3445 Stiperstones Hills survey, Shropshire****Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Project recently concluded with grey literature (largely concerned with monument management) archived with EH and the HER.

#### 4904 Mendip Hills AONB

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Project delayed due to competing commitments amongst key staff. Work has progressed on text, images and graphics. Delivery to EH Publications is anticipated in November 2013.

**Date of completion:** November 2013.

#### 5219 Hatfield Enclosure, Marden, Wiltshire

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The draft of the Marden excavation assessment report was circulated in March/April. Additional specialist assessments were commissioned of the bone pins and stone. An updated project design is well advanced and a further campaign of excavation is under consideration for later in the present NHPP period.

#### 5291 Forest of Dean, Gloucestershire

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project has been extended to allow for staffing difficulties, and is currently on schedule in accordance with revised timescales. A short article has been published in *British Archaeology*. The draft monograph is expected in June and the sub-regional research framework in December. Proposals for an accessible, well-illustrated book are being considered.

**Date of completion:** December 2013.

#### 5330, 6072 North Pennines mining landscapes

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** The 6072 module of the multidisciplinary 'Miner-Farmer Landscapes of the North Pennines AONB' project (rapid ground survey informed by aerial imagery of 18km<sup>2</sup> between the South Tyne and Nent valleys) was commissioned from North Pennines Archaeology Ltd and completed by Wardell Armstrong Archaeology Ltd. Completion is signalled by delivery of the module database and covering report.

5330, the final reporting stage of the overall project, is due for completion within the 2013-14 plan year.

#### 5683 West Penwith

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Work on the volume, based on 30 years of previous field survey, is progressing. However, delays caused by staff shortages have pushed the anticipated delivery date for the draft publication text two or three months beyond the anticipated deadline in April 2013.

**Date of completion:** June 2013.

#### 5831 Prehistoric hilltop enclosures of Hereford and Shropshire

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** The concluding reports were archived with [Archaeological Data Services](#) (York) and are available via this and the county HER webpages. Small subsequent contracts may be issued to assist with local journal publications to highlight the project results.

**5980 Later Silbury****Status:** ●

**Progress:** An extremely successful evaluation project which has benefitted from exceptional project management and the value of the INTRASIS process. The project has been published in the Wiltshire Archaeological and Natural History Magazine (Vol 106, 2013) and two Research Reports (March 2013). Three, perhaps four further Research Reports are anticipated in the next couple of months. The archive phase is expected to conclude later in 2013.

**Date of completion:** Autumn 2013.

**6294 New Uses for Survey Data: trial of lidar for rapid monument recording****Status:** ●

**Progress:** A project design was prepared and the work will be carried out by the English Heritage Remote Sensing team in 2013. The project will assess ways in which new data sources, primarily lidar and online satellite and aerial imagery can be used for rapid identification purposes. The project will establish whether use of these sources is an effective method for national identification and will provide guidelines on their potential for future use.

**Date of completion:** December 2013.

**6302 Marden NMP enhancement, Marden, Wiltshire****Status:** ●

**Progress:** A project design was produced and work began on phase 1. The English Heritage Geophysics Team conducted caesium magnetometer surveys over the priority sites identified by aerial photography: 10ha at Charlton St. Peter, covering the barrow cemetery and the Roman villa; and 16ha at the Wilsford henge and Marden barrow cemetery. A return visit to Wilsford and Charlton covered two previously inaccessible areas. The surveys established the survival of sub-surface remains of parts of the Wilsford site, which are rarely seen on aerial photographs, and recovered important new evidence. Draft reports were produced.

**Date of completion:** Phase 1 May 2013.

**6303 NAIS Pilot 1 Lowland****Status:** ●

**Progress:** Following an internal call for proposals, an area in West Wiltshire was chosen as the lowland NAIS pilot. Stakeholder consultation informed definition of the project area which covers 199 sq km taking in the Avon valley and A350 road corridor between Chippenham and Trowbridge, along with adjacent areas. A draft project design was circulated to the project team. The work will be carried out by English Heritage teams. The project will include air photo mapping and analysis, developing National Mapping Programme (NMP) methods and standards as appropriate. This will inform targeted ground-based work including (potentially) geophysical survey, analytical field survey, ploughzone investigations, palaeoenvironmental and/or geoarchaeological investigation, and sample excavation. The application of the targeted work will be informed by iterative stages of investigation. The project will explore how to maximise the potential of these techniques, given limited resources, to improve our understanding, and subsequent protection, of the historic environment.

**Date of completion:** March 2015.

### 6304 NAIS Pilot I Upland

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Following an internal call for proposals, an area on the edge of the Lakes, Dales and Arnside was chosen as the upland NAIS pilot. A project design was completed and work began on the air photo mapping and analysis. This will inform targeted ground-based work including (potentially) geophysical survey, analytical field survey, ploughzone investigations, palaeoenvironmental/geoarchaeological investigation, and sample excavation. The application of the targeted work will be informed by iterative stages of investigation. The project will explore how to maximise the potential of these techniques, given limited resources, to improve our understanding, and subsequent protection, of the historic environment. The work is being carried out by English Heritage teams. Air photo interpretation and mapping began at the end of February and is progressing well with good returns from lidar on the eastern, or Pennine fringe. Mapping of the Arnside and Silverdale area on the west side of the project area is almost complete.

**Date of completion:** March 2015.



The National Archaeological Identification Survey Pilot I (Lakes, Dales and Arnside) is now underway. A view north-west towards Kendal and the Lyth Valley. This is a rolling drumlin landscape rising to the Lake District fells. Photo by Dave MacLeod, © English Heritage.

## ACTIVITY 3A5: IDENTIFICATION OF WETLAND / WATERLOGGED SITES

### Context

Sites such as Star Carr and Flag Fen are reminders of the national and international importance and vulnerability of wetland heritage. Urban waterlogged zones can be extensive and of exceptional significance. Standard survey techniques are insufficient to model and map such landscapes. Action will focus on development of deposit models to highlight potential, methodologies to test prediction, and survey in areas under significant threat of change. Upland peatlands, small (<10ha) wetlands, and urban waterlogged

archaeology remain poorly understood and little assessed. With the exception of select periods and regions, understanding of the archaeology associated with river channels also requires consideration of distribution patterns, character and significance.

**Activity Lead:** Jen Heathcote, Historic Environment Intelligence Analyst (Environmental Impacts) ([jen.heathcote@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:jen.heathcote@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £340k

### Protection Result 3A5.1: Identification of priority waterlogged and wetland sites for immediate protection

#### **6240 Exceptional waterlogged heritage (previously known as Identifying top priority vulnerable wetland sites)**

The project aims to determine threat level, evidence base and potential protection mechanisms at vulnerable or deteriorating wetland and waterlogged sites and has a number of stages. Stage 1 comprised compilation of a long list of sites with exceptional waterlogged heritage based on a revised version of the most significant sites (List A) presented in Heritage Management of England's Wetlands (HMEW 2002). During Stage 2, standardised Statements of Significance will be prepared for each site and published on-line. Following this, candidates on the long list will then be assessed to determine active threat, current protection, understanding of condition and any further investigation required to better understand the above as well as identifying places where changes in management regimes may be used to improve protection.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Stage 1 completed: a list of 39 places with exceptional waterlogged heritage have been compiled and agreed internally. A report describing the selection process, methodology and list will be made available on the 3A5 activity page of the English Heritage web-site in April 2013.

Stage 2 Draft UPD prepared: this stage comprises preparation of Statements of Significance for each place on the list. For some sites this means refreshing existing information from the HMEW project, in others new data needs to be collated. The Statements will be published on the 3A5 activity page of the English Heritage web-site as they are finished; this will provide a comparable level of baseline information about each site in terms of its character and significance.

**Date of completion:** Stage 2 – March 2014.



## Protection Result 3A5.2: Characterisation and assessment of waterlogged and wetland areas

### Distribution and significance of urban waterlogged deposits

This programme of work comprises a suite of small projects to collate and synthesise extant data on urban centres with known waterlogged urban stratigraphy. Products will include desk-based assessments collating legacy information; the construction of deposit models; HER enhancement; and the production of GIS shape files and accompanying narrative to record areas with known or potential waterlogged urban sensitivity. The projects will a) contextualise key-hole interventions to better understand research potential of deposits in the most efficient and accessible way possible for the urban centre under consideration and b) provide a high level alert map of the places that are likely to contain waterlogged urban stratigraphy to aid planning archaeologists.

Once all of the projects have been completed, we aim to run a workshop for the investigators to share experiences of producing work of this kind, compare methods and outputs, and identify lessons learnt for future comparable projects. Feedback from respective curators on utility and usability will also be on the agenda.

#### 6502 Carlisle

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Draft report delivered and comments returned in March 2013. We have proposed a small piece of supplementary work should be carried out to explore issues that have arisen in the modelling undertaken, the details of which have yet to be finalised. This additional work extends the project slightly into next financial year.

**Date of completion:** New end date tbc – likely to be May 2013.

#### 6509 Berwick-upon-Tweed

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Project progressing according to timetable.

**Date of completion:** April 2013.

#### 6512 Boston

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** A slight delay has occurred as the final report was delivered at the end of March 2013, so commenting and project closure will now fall into the next financial year.

**Date of completion:** April 2013.

#### 6517 Bristol

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Final report delivered, comments returned and project closed.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

#### 6513 Droitwich

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The period over which the project will run has had to be extended because of problems the team had in producing data to the original timetable. It was then further impacted by unexpected demands on staff time in early 2013.

**Date of completion:** June 2013.

**Assessing the distribution and heritage value of small wetlands for HERs and AMIE**

This programme comprises two projects, one external (6244) and one internal (6484) and aims to assess the significance and heritage value of our smaller wetland sites, so far neglected in terms of strategic consideration. The internal and external project teams are in consultation to ensure that duplication is avoided and that appropriate cross-referencing of each other's results is undertaken.

**6244** This project will develop and implement a toolkit for the rapid mapping and assessment of such assets within the HER for those areas of Worcestershire where they are most under threat from development, land-use or environmental management; thereby providing a readily accessible means of ensuring that such significant deposits are better identified and better recognised, and thus more effectively protected in the future. The PD has been commissioned and is being revised to address minor comments; project initiation is imminent.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** A draft final report has been completed but extenuating circumstances mean there is a slight delay on the internal review by the commissioned organisation before it can be submitted. A new completion date has yet to be agreed but will be early in the new financial year.

**Date of completion:** tbc – likely to be May 2013.

**6484** This project will assess the broad geographical location and character of England's small wetlands (natural and artificial); explain value/contribution to landscape, archaeological and palaeoecological understanding; examine relative value of different categories, ages and/or geographical distributions in terms of evidence potential; and assess risks attached to them.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The desk-based research has been completed and case-studies are being collated to illustrate particular types and issues. Discussions are being held to refine the format for presenting the information and routes for wide dissemination within historic environment and natural environment sectors are being explored.

**Date of completion:** June 2013.

**2295 North west wetlands – south west Lancashire volume**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Published and now available.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

**3191 Wetland archaeology of Somerset**

Synthesis of character and extent of wetlands

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** In press with Oxbow.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

**3839 Modelling urban waterlogged archaeological deposits: Nantwich deposit modelling and monitoring**

This project is using Nantwich, Cheshire, to assess the extent of and threat to buried waterlogged archaeology in the context of commercial development. It is aiming to link commercial development schemes to long-term monitoring and to map extent, depth and changes to the rich waterlogged deposits under the town.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Work is proceeding to schedule, with all relevant tasks completed to date. The project has established a robust monitoring methodology. The unusual levels of rainfall in 2012 could be problematic within the current 3-year term of monitoring. Originally, a 5-year term was proposed and discussions will be held to determine whether we need to revert to that period to allow sufficient data to be gathered to provide a sound basis for drawing up guidance on the management of the archaeological resource.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

**5564 Beccles Triple Post Alignment: understanding, contextualising and managing an Iron Age wetland site**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** The final report has been submitted and results from this project are also relevant to the pending project, 6312 (see below). A monograph is planned and will form the subject of a separate stage in due course.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

**5822 Hydrological assessment of Star Carr catchment, Yorkshire**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Site decommissioned of monitoring equipment as European funding for excavation of the site agreed (see 6064 below). Potential exists to use data to refine understanding of the site context and its recent history but this will form a separate project in due course.

**Date of completion:** December 2012.

**6064 Star Carr: an excavation to inform future management discussions**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** The project demonstrated that the waterlogged part of the site is deteriorating fast, but still yielding useful evidential value this interpretation was broadly agreed by English Heritage. Consequently, a funding application was made to the European Research Council for five further years of research and a grant was made for the period of 1st January 2012-2016 at a value of c. £1.5 million Euros. A PD has been written and agreed by EHAC and subject to permissions further excavation will commence in Summer 2013.

**Date of completion:** February 2013.

## Protection Result 3A5.3: Improved methodologies for remote sensing in wetland areas

**6312 Prospection research and development for wetland and waterlogged remains**

The project aims to review research into remote sensing techniques in wet/waterlogged contexts, to assess how to improve accuracy and cost-effectiveness in identifying significant survival of heritage assets.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** PD stalled. Progress dependent on geophysics team priorities. However, the unexpected delay means that new results from other projects in 3A5 and other Activities can be incorporated into the project.

**Date of completion:** tbc.



## MEASURE 4. ASSESSMENT OF CHARACTER AND SIGNIFICANCE

This Measure focuses English Heritage support and action on a range of themes and places which in our estimation, and through consultation, have emerged as being insufficiently understood, significantly threatened by change, and of potentially high significance in terms of their heritage values. Activities will focus on specific targeted subsets of each topic, as set out in the more detailed descriptions. Action will focus explicitly on establishing tangible protection outcomes for the assets and landscapes under scrutiny.

Assessing character and significance comprises the following 17 Activities:

- 4A1 HISTORIC TOWNS AND SUBURBS
- 4A2 LATER TWENTIETH-CENTURY HERITAGE
- 4A3 HISTORIC PORTS, DOCKYARDS, HARBOURS AND COASTAL RESORTS
- 4A4 PUBLIC, CIVIC AND COMMUNAL BUILDINGS
- 4B1 HISTORIC WATER MANAGEMENT ASSETS
- 4B2 TRADITIONAL INDUSTRY, MODERN INDUSTRY, MINING AND ASSOCIATED HOUSING
- 4B3 TRANSPORT AND COMMUNICATIONS
- 4C1 SPORT AND ENTERTAINMENT BUILDINGS AND LANDSCAPES
- 4D1 PLACES OF WORSHIP
- 4D2 CHURCHYARDS, CEMETERIES AND BURIAL GROUNDS
- 4E1 BATTLEFIELDS
- 4E2 TWENTIETH-CENTURY MILITARY HERITAGE
- 4F1 RURAL HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND THEIR SETTINGS
- 4F2 FIELD SYSTEMS
- 4G1 PLEISTOCENE AND EARLY HOLOCENE ARCHAEOLOGY
- 4G2 PLOUGHZONE ARCHAEOLOGY
- 4H1 SUBMERGED HERITAGE ASSETS AND LANDSCAPES

The four year allocation of resource (both staff and funding) for this measure for 2011-2015 is **£6.910M**

Facing page: Heinz, South Building, Hayes, Hillingdon. Post War Buildings (4A2). Photo by James O. Davies, © English Heritage.

## ACTIVITY 4AI: HISTORIC TOWNS AND SUBURBS

### Context

Our urban centres are subject to continuous and significant change. Work focused on developing significance and protection is still outstanding, with particular targets including several major centres, some small towns and market towns. Action will include assessment of poorly understood suburbs, public houses, urban vernacular, designed open spaces, vulnerable building types, and buried archaeological assets.

**Activity Leads:** Roger M Thomas, Historic Environment Intelligence Analyst (Development) ([rogerm.thomas@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:rogerm.thomas@english-heritage.org.uk)); Kathryn Morrison, Assessment Team (East) Manager ([Kathryn.morrison@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:Kathryn.morrison@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £2.005M

### Protection Result 4AI.1: Enhanced protection for historic urban asset types

#### 5924 Suburbs national survey

A national survey to provide better understanding of suburban development, identifying regional and chronological variation, significance of building types and landscape forms. This exemplar project will provide context for designation at national and local levels.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Work on the first stage of this project is well underway. Additional research on London suburban shopping parades has been commissioned.

The project will provide a template for the assessment of suburban buildings and landscapes nationally.

**Date of completion:** December 2015.

#### 6245 Vulnerable urban building types: commercial buildings

Public houses have been identified as one of the most threatened urban commercial building types. In response, a scoping exercise was undertaken, to interrogate current levels of understanding. This will be followed up by a series of projects which will enhance our understanding of the building type.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Urban and suburban public houses are currently under severe threat. In response, we have scoped four projects, each addressing a different aspect of public houses. These will be designed and taken forward in 2013-14, for delivery by December 2015.

These projects will help us to understand under-researched aspects of this building type, such as the post-war pub. They will also allow us to gauge current designation levels for certain categories of pub.

**Date of completion:** December 2015.

#### 6247 Designed landscapes national review

The project will review the state of knowledge, identify significant gaps in understanding of, threats affecting, and therefore management needs of urban parks, gardens and other designed spaces. It will lead to priority projects producing exemplary studies of parks, open spaces and streets in towns and answering needs of local managers in preserving their significance.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** A review of urban designed landscapes was delivered in November 2012. This will enable the identification and prioritisation of follow-on projects, to enhance understanding of parks and other designed urban landscapes.

**Date of completion:** November 2012.

**6314 Detached suburban housing**

This project will develop a detailed heritage asset description for detached suburban houses to provide general context for assessment of significance for future designation cases or other management regimes.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** A draft text produced in June 2012 is to be revised and published on the website in 2015. It has been delayed to allow the document to incorporate the findings of the national suburbs project (5924).

This will provide guidance on assessing the significance of suburban detached houses for listing and other purposes.

**Date of completion:** December 2015.

## Protection Result 4A1.2: Enhanced protection for historic urban places

**5866 The Caves of Nottingham**

A large number of caves beneath Nottingham have been surveyed in recent years: there is a need to complete this survey work, disseminate findings, and to follow this up with guidance on the future management of the caves.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The survey stage of this project is in abeyance because core staff have been redirected onto other projects locally. Before it resumes, there is a need for an updated project design which clearly articulates the protection outcomes of the project. This is likely to take the form of a risk assessment which will highlight the vulnerabilities of the asset and provide guidance for future management.

**Date of completion:** December 2011 (survey stage), July 2012 (entire project).

**6315 Informing growth: Boston**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Boston, Lincolnshire, has suffered from economic decline and neglect over a long period, yet has a wealth of historic assets.

This project aims to lift the profile of the town as a heritage destination, as a means of securing the long-term protection of its historic buildings and spaces. The project is being designed, and will begin in April 2013.

**Date of completion:** Subject to PD.

**6521 Informing growth: Hull**

Priority urban regeneration and renewal historic area assessment research projects feeding into planning of change by identifying significance. Required in general programmes of renewal and where developer-funded research does not answer EH needs. Regional teams will assist in identifying priority areas.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** David and Susan Neave, *The Building of a Port City*, was published by Hull City Council and English Heritage in November 2012.

The book advances understanding of the value of Hull's standing buildings.

**Date of completion:** November 2012.

**6602 Coventry: raising awareness of post-1945 heritage**

This project aims to promote understanding of the significance of Coventry city centre. As one of the first comprehensive post-war rebuilding exercises, Coventry was very influential and is studied by planners and architectural students worldwide. Understanding and appreciating the status of Coventry is important at a time when much of the original 1950s fabric is being replaced or renewed.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** A publication in the Informed Conservation series, on the subject of central Coventry, is being written by J and C Gould.

This will inform change in the city centre.

**Date of completion:** December 2013 (for publication by December 2014).

**Assessing character of priority smaller historic towns**

Characterisation and assessment of significance of the historic environment of England's smaller towns, to improve decision-making and advice (especially for planning). Current county assessments planned for completion are: Cambridgeshire; Buckinghamshire; Staffordshire; Warwickshire and Solihull, Leicestershire; North Yorkshire; and Lincolnshire. Examples of completed urban characterisation projects for other counties can be found at: <http://archaeologydataservice.ac.uk/archives/view/EUS/>

**2559 Cambridgeshire.**

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Completion of an EUS project has been stalled for some years (although all the town reports exist in draft, and are being used for planning purposes). Discussions have recently taken place with the County Council about arrangements for completing the work and a revised PD is in preparation.

**Date of completion:** (Dependent on when the additional funds for completing the work are agreed.)

**3514 Oxfordshire.**

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** A part-completed EUS has been put in abeyance pending completion of a county-wide HLC project. It is hoped to restart and complete the project once the characterisation framework provided by the HLC is in place.

**Date of completion:** n/a.

**5215 Buckinghamshire.**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** There have been some delays to this project due to pressures of other work in the county (e.g. HS2) but the project is now nearing completion. Presentations have been made to the district councils, and a final overview report is currently out for consultation.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

**5605 Staffordshire.**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This project is proceeding satisfactorily, and has been successful in engaging with the local (district) planning authorities. It is due for completion early in 2013.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.



**5922 Warwickshire and Solihull.****Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project is proceeding, although with some delays and cost overruns (to be met by Warwickshire County Council). Solihull MBC has indicated an interest in taking part in the project, but has yet to make a formal commitment to this. A new timetable and delivery date has been agreed.

**Date of completion:** August 2013.

**6091 Leicestershire and Rutland.****Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** A draft Project Design has been produced. The local authority has been considering options for undertaking the project. It is hoped (subject to funding) to start the project later (either towards the end of the current plan period, or in the next one).

**Date of completion:** n/a.

**6447 Devon.****Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project was commissioned at the end of 2011/12. There has been some cost overrun in the work on the first three towns, but steps are being taken to address this so that the rest of the project stays within budget.

**Date of completion:** September 2014.

**Urban Archaeological Databases**

This programme of work supports the development of urban archaeological databases for a small number of towns and cities of the highest archaeological importance, to improve decision-making and advice (especially for planning). Towns to be completed are London, Bristol, Chester, Oxford, Winchester, Bath, Hereford, and projects are in development or underway.

**1581 Winchester.****Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The City Council has now commissioned a consultant to complete the draft volume. We understand that the work is due to be completed in mid-June 2013.

**Date of completion:** June 2013.

**1665 Bath.****Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The completed text and illustrations for the Bath Urban Archaeological Assessment (UAA) have been edited by EH, but have been awaiting a response from Bath and NE Somerset on editorial queries since May 2012. Repeated attempts to contact to the Council about this have elicited no response.

**Date of completion:** 2013?

**2097 Oxford.****Status:** ●

**Progress:** The Oxford Archaeological Plan (a component of a planned wider Heritage Plan for the city) is close to completion. It includes characterisation studies and an archaeological resource assessment and research agenda,

drawing on the previously completed Urban Archaeological Database and other sources. The work is due to be fully completed very early in 2013/14 (final editing and printing of the Oxford Archaeological Action Plan).

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

#### **1690 Bristol.**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Work to complete the Bristol UAA is proceeding satisfactorily. Completion of the draft publication is due in late 2013.

**Date of completion:** Late 2013.

#### **6039 Chester.**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Compilation of an Urban Archaeological Database for Chester is proceeding according to timetable and budget (a variation was agreed to cover the costs of work not originally included). The results are impressive. The work is on track for completion in August 2013.

**Date of completion:** August 2013.

#### **6041 London.**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** A pilot project (involving looking at sample areas in the City and Southwark) for the London Urban Archaeological Database is close to completion – a draft report is promised for 2 April 2013. This will require review and comment, and possibly some revisions, before sign-off by EH. Thereafter, the aim is to commission a PD for the main phase of work.

**Date of completion:** June 2013.

#### **6070 Hereford.**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** A Research Framework document for Hereford, drawing on the previously completed Urban Archaeological Database, has now been completed.

**Date of completion:** February 2013.

#### **6519 York.**

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** A review of the operation of the York Ave Arup 'Development and Archaeology' study of 1989 was commissioned from York City Council at the end of 2011/12. No further progress has been made but discussions between the relevant parties are scheduled to take place.

**Date of completion:** n/a.

**Characterising major urban areas**

Characterisation and assessment of a small number of selected major urban areas, to improve decision-making and advice (especially for planning). Decisions about which towns to tackle will be made on the basis of need. Metropolitan areas currently in progress are Birmingham, Coventry and York.

**3455 Merseyside.**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** This major project has been completed.

**4664 Greater Manchester.**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** This major project has been completed.

**5447 Birmingham.**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This project is under way and progressing smoothly.

**5927 Coventry.**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This project is very close to completion. Final revisions to the HLC project report and dissemination on the Council web-site, is due to take place early in 2013/14. This will mark the completion of the project.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

**6442 York.**

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** A York Historic Environment Characterisation project was commissioned through York City Council at the end of 2011/12. A substantial and unexpected variation request has been received from the York team. This is currently the subject of negotiations.

**Date of completion:** n/a.

## Protection Result 4A1.3: Better community protection of historic urban fabric

**5645 Early fabric in historic towns: Bristol**

English Heritage has commissioned a book on the under-researched subject of historic town houses in Bristol.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The material for two volumes on Bristol town houses by a local historian is currently in the hands of the English Heritage Publications Department. This work will present a groundbreaking analysis of the subject, and will form the basis of a review of the designation of historic houses in the city.

**Date of completion:** These volumes are due to be published in June 2014.

**5957 Early fabric in historic towns: Hereford**

Synthesis of existing records of medieval buildings in Hereford, resulting in publication of a monograph contributing to the understanding of medieval urban buildings.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The timetable for this project has been revised, and it is now due for submission for publication in December 2013. The book will build on recording by various individuals and bodies over the years. By providing a synthesis and analysis, it will further understanding, and therefore protection, of medieval buildings in Hereford.

**Date of completion:** December 2013.

**6250 Early fabric in historic towns: voluntary group project**

Projects run by voluntary groups with coordinator and some in-house guidance to record and assess early buildings in historic towns. Will result in enhanced HERs, synthetic analysis of early fabric in individual towns and evidence for adequacy of existing levels of protection.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Scoping is currently being undertaken, with a view to setting up a project in 2013-14. The project will encourage the recording and publication of historic urban buildings by voluntary groups.

**Date of completion:** Subject to PD.



Edinburgh Dome, Malvern St James School For Girls, Malvern, Worcestershire (4A2). Photo by James O. Davies, © English Heritage.

## ACTIVITY 4A2: LATER TWENTIETH-CENTURY HERITAGE

### Context

Post-WW2 buildings and landscapes are facing acute redevelopment pressures and their designation and protection is often highly contentious, underscoring the need for an enhanced, authoritative knowledge base as well as an increased public appreciation of their value. Consensus on strategies for management is vital. Action will focus on a thematic or case-based approach to

espousing values and practical protection for heritage beyond the traditional.

**Activity Lead:** Emily Gee, Head of Designation ([Emily.gee@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:Emily.gee@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £51.6k

### Protection Result 4A2.1: Better protection of later twentieth-century buildings and landscapes

#### 5891 'The Seventies: the twentieth century architecture series' publication

A Twentieth Century Society journal in their regular series drawing together a number of scholarly articles on buildings of the 1970s.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Publication released in May 2012.

**Date of completion:** May 2012.

#### 5925 England's Schools 1962-88: A Thematic Survey of purpose-built schools

This major study highlights the diversity of post-war schools through a series of regional case studies, supplemented by a national overview of educational and architectural contexts and school building types. Commissioned at a time of significant change in the school estate, the project aims to provide a national context for the assessment, protection and management of post-war schools.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Report completed in November 2012. A shortlist for assessment has been made. Cases to be assessed in two phases (paired with post-war universities) over 2013-14 and 2014-15, with sensitive cases identified for priority attention.

**Date of completion:** Internal report complete Nov. 2012; Designations phase 1 2013-14; phase 2 2014-15.

#### 6318 Completion of suspended post-war listing projects

This project reactivates two past thematic listing projects: on post-war private houses and post-war university buildings, where assessments were completed nearly a decade ago but progress was subsequently suspended.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** (a) Post-war private houses completed, save 3 cases in the South. Lots of positive and high profile press comment in response to designation outcomes in 2012-13. (b) Post-war universities decided to combine these with schools into post-war education buildings project in two phases 2013-14 and 2014-15. DCMS agreement in principle to proceed.

**Date of completion:** (a) very early 2013-14 (b) Designations phase 1 2013-14; phase 2 2014-15.

**Thematic understanding and designation assessment of post-war buildings and landscapes**

We are beginning a rolling series of projects on post-war subjects, each starting with the mid 1960s where English Heritage's pioneering post-war thematic listing projects ended, and through the early 1990s looking ahead to when these assets will be eligible for designation under the so-called 'thirty year rule' (Principles of Selection for Listing Buildings, DCMS, March 2010). Projects will follow a similar template of an overarching report on the building type in the period 1965-1990 (which might take the form of an Introduction to Heritage Asset) and recommended exemplars for designation follow through.

**6251 Post-War Thematics: Commercial Buildings 1964-1994****Status:** ●

**Progress:** Thematic project started late 2012 and largely complete by end March 2013. Two main products: an Introduction to the Heritage Asset and a long list of exemplars for designation assessment. These are being sifted in April 2013. Designation assessments to be taken forward for buildings eligible for listing in 2013-14.

**Date of completion:** HPD report complete April 2013; Designations 2013-14.

## Protection Result 4A2.2: Greater sensitivity to twentieth-century buildings and their significance

**4552 EH Publication: *Space, Hope and Brutalism, English Architecture 1945-75***

A major publication written by Elain Harwood, with specially-commissioned photography by James Davies, designed to provide a basis for the assessment of significance of our more recent built heritage.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Text has been dispatched to Yale late 2012. Due to be published by Yale University Press in early 2014.

**Date of completion:** Text complete late 2012; publication early 2014.

**6257 Understanding New Landscapes**

The development of this as a project has been delayed due to restructuring and moved back to 2013-4 and 2014-5. It is currently being reshaped: a project brief will consider a 2 part project using characterisation methodologies based on one large town with outcomes being an exemplar of the evidence-base toolkit necessary for assessing character for LPAs to consider in the planning process through a number of planning roles specifically identified in the NPPF for the character of place. Once agreed, a project brief would go out to tender in April 2013.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Project plan being considered and to be discussed, with possible start in 2013-14.

**6320 English Heritage Architect series**

English Heritage has worked with RIBA Publications and the Twentieth Century Society to produce a series of books on twentieth century architects, most of whom have not been previously published in book form. The eleven titles in the first round have been published, with titles on a range of major British post-war practices such as Powell and Moya; Leonard Manasseh and Partners; Chamberlin, Powell and Bon; Robert Maguire and Keith Murray; and Ahrends, Burton and Koralek.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** First phase of 11 titles all published.

Discussions re: the next titles are under way, and new designs for the books being discussed with the EH Publication Board.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Discussions re: the next titles are under way, and new designs for the books being discussed with the EH Publication Board.



Vodafone Ltd, Formerly TR House, corner of Queensway (Buckingham Road) and Water Eaton Road, Bletchley, Milton Keynes. MK3 5JL. From north west. Taken for the Commercial Offices Project. Photo by Steve Cole, © English Heritage.

### 6321 Public engagement work for later C20 heritage

We intend to publish a series of explanatory, engaging and illustrated web-pages on the history and designation of post-war buildings. We hope this will involve working with significant sector experts such as the Twentieth Century Society, Tate, RIBA, the British Property Federation, DoCoMoMo. An exhibition on the history and future of post-war listing, with associated events, is under development for 2013.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** (a) ongoing engagement with the sector, (b) Heritage Data Management / Designation input to new designations on the web and revised post-war designation pages on EH website, (c) 'Brutal and Beautiful' exhibition on post-war listing booked for September-November 2013 at Quadriga Gallery.

**Date of completion:** (a) Ongoing, (b) New webpages and content by July 2013, (c) September 2013.

### 6322 Jubilee Heritage

A web-based publication on the historic parks and gardens commissioned as part of royal jubilees, which was English Heritage's contribution to the Queen's Diamond Jubilee celebrations in 2012.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** A [successful web-based publication](#), illustrated and informative, has been published.

### 6606 New edition of England: A guide to post-war listed buildings

A new edition of England, A Guide to Post-War Listed Buildings is planned for 2014. The original was written by Elaine Harwood and published in 2000, with an extended, revised edition in 2003.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Entries being written by late March/early April 2013. Due to be published 2013.

**Date of completion:** Text early 2013-14; publication expected late 2013.

## ACTIVITY 4A3: HISTORIC PORTS, DOCKYARDS, HARBOURS AND COASTAL RESORTS

### Context

Historic coastal settlements and complexes are of great heritage significance, and subject to specific and varied pressures relating to environment, ownership and economic pressure. Action will focus on establishing the character and significance of such places to inform sustainable change. Work will form a continuum with the national coastal survey programme (3A2), but

recognises the unique challenges associated with coastal settlements.

**Activity Lead:** Allan Brodie, Senior Investigator ([allan.brodie@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:allan.brodie@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £449k

### Protection Result 4A3.1: Enhanced understanding of significance: national themes

#### 6262 National review of ports and harbours

A national review of state of knowledge of ports and harbours, generic threats and opportunities facing them, principal points of significance, survival rate and principal research gaps. It will include analysis of effects of short-sea shipping and new industrial uses for historic ports and harbours.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Project is being undertaken by Oxford Archaeology South – report of findings was due in October 2012, but was not delivered until January 2013. It was widely circulated and extensive revisions will be required to complete the work.

**Date of completion:** September 2013.

#### 6305 Rapid threat review of ports and harbours

Ports and harbours are changing constantly under different pressures, including regeneration and decay. The changes affect the historic fabric of these places and vary in scale from a widespread impact on a whole town to specific threats to individual structures. A rapid 'state of the nation' survey will identify the specific development or decay issues affecting these places, assess their likely impact on historic fabric, indicate where protection is currently lacking and demonstrate priorities for new research.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Project was undertaken by Oxford Archaeology South – report of findings due in October 2012. The completed report was provided in March 2013.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

#### 6323 Amusement Parks

Rapid assessment of history and heritage of amusement parks to inform designation in Margate and Blackpool.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Research work has begun and will be complete by September 2013. The key sites are not open until Spring 2013 and the completed report has to wait until they are examined. A research paper may also be published in a volume of essays celebrating Britain's amusement heritage.

**Date of completion:** September 2013.



**6324 Seafront structures**

An examination of the seafront in England's resorts, potentially culminating in a book and an improved understanding of the heritage of this key area of resorts.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** More resources for this project may be available due to the cancellation of the project of Scarborough, allowing a longer, more detailed study producing more tangible outputs and heritage protection results. The project design process will begin in May 2013.

**Date of completion:** March 2015.

## Protection Result 4A3.2: Enhanced protection for specific threatened ports, harbours and resorts

**6142 Assessing the significance of seaside resorts: Blackpool**

Blackpool occupies an important place in the history of the English seaside resort and retains many features and buildings which show how the town's attractions were developed to meet the needs of changing markets. Much of this heritage fails to meet the criteria for listing but nevertheless has considerable importance. This project aims to assess Blackpool's seaside heritage, provide the understanding that will lead to its better protection, and raise awareness by the publication of a book in the Informed Conservation series.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Text of book has been completed and submitted for publication which is now scheduled for March 2014. Project team working with Blackpool Council regarding local designation and heritage protection.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

**6265 Assessing the significance of historic dockyards: Devonport**

This project will undertake significance and designation assessments of post-1914 installations at Devonport, with the aim of improved presentation of existing knowledge and more effective and sustainable protection.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Project design was put out to tender and successful bidder, the National Dockyards Society, was notified at the end of September 2012. Inclement weather has delayed fieldwork, but this should be complete by late April. Work is proceeding well on the historical sections of the report. A draft report is expected by late May.

**Date of completion:** Summer 2013.

**6306 Assessing the significance of ports and harbours: Cornish ports and harbours**

Building on existing approaches (RCZAS, EUS), this project will identify and gather the additional information required to provide a rounded view of the archaeological, architectural and landscape character and significance of historic ports and harbours in Cornwall which are under significant threat, to provide the heritage evidence base for strategic planning, management and protection.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Project design was put out to tender in February 2013 and Cornwall Council was the successful bidder. Work will begin in September 2013 and will be completed in March 2015.

**Date of completion:** March 2015.

## Protection Result 4A3.3: Enhanced evidence base for improving protection of historic ports, harbours and resorts

### **6263 Coastal settlement regeneration and marine planning impact on coastal heritage**

Research to identify the relationship between and impact on the historic environment of coastal settlement regeneration and marine planning objectives.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Themes related to this project are being identified, but any work on this topic would have to take place in 2013-4, alongside or as part of the development of new projects on ports following the receipt of the reports arising from 6262 and 6305.

### **6264 Port master plans**

Project to produce guidance on role of the historic environment in port master plans: to include development of Heritage Partnership Agreements with port owners to assist with long-term management of historic character in working ports.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Work on this subject is due to take place in 2013-4. The development of the project design is taking place and it hoped to be ready for the tendering process in mid-2013.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

### **6325 South-east resorts**

Region-wide conservation plan for seaside resorts.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** This project has been postponed indefinitely as there is no longer a provision to pay consultants to carry out this work.

### **6326 Sea Change follow-up project**

The project will be a follow-up and analysis of the historic environment elements of the successful Sea Change projects which were completed in various English seaside towns. This will look at lessons learned, principles for (and barriers to) success and 'spin off' benefits such as community engagement/ownership, linkages with other initiatives, building relationships, appropriate business models and the like.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Research has been carried out and the findings of the study are being written up. Report expected to be completed by June 2013.

**Date of completion:** June 2013.

## ACTIVITY 4A4: PUBLIC, CIVIC AND COMMUNAL BUILDINGS

### Context

Town halls, schools, courts, police stations, libraries, drill halls, post offices, workers' institutes and many other civic/community buildings are at risk of substantive change or loss. Action will focus on national, regional or area-based assessments on poorly-understood classes of public, civic, communal

and non-twentieth-century military buildings in civic settings facing disposal, demolition or refurbishment.

**Activity Lead:** Susie Barson, Assessment Team (South) Manager ([Susie.barson@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:Susie.barson@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £308k

### Protection Result 4A4.1: Establishing priority targets for protection

#### **6329 Assessing national knowledge base for public and civic buildings**

A rapid analysis of publications and archives containing information on these classes of buildings and associated designed landscapes to ascertain what is known about them and to identify major gaps in knowledge. This is necessary to inform priorities for targeted applied research to inform heritage protection and management of the assets. Production of an internal report is intended, to support follow-up work.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** A full review of published and unpublished literature held both internally and externally on a range of public, civic and communal buildings, was carried out with the assistance of the EH library, and a review summary produced. This collation of material has already proved invaluable for two new national projects on threatened building types: libraries and drill halls, and will prove very useful in future projects on town halls, fire stations and police stations.

#### **National threat assessment of municipal buildings**

A rapid assessment of threats to municipal buildings deriving from post-CSR cuts to local authority budgets, the proposed Localism Bill, and the transfer of public assets. Results to be correlated with those of the literature review (above) to inform targeted research and appropriate protection responses.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** A report commissioned jointly with the HLF was produced entitled 'Local Authority Heritage Assets: current issues and opportunities' by historic environment consultants Green Balance. The report provided an overview of the issues and challenges facing local authority-owned heritage assets, and drew attention to the opportunities for improving heritage asset management both strategically and in detail. By way of a set of recommendations, the report suggests how the roles of the key organisations, including EH, can be strengthened to ensure better protection for heritage assets whether retained by the local authority or transferred to new ownership and use. The report is now available on the HELM website, with a statement of intent from EH to address some of the issues through updating existing guidance, and providing training and funding advice. Go to: [www.helm.org.uk/server/show/nav.21790](http://www.helm.org.uk/server/show/nav.21790)

### Protection Result 4A4.2: Enhanced protection of priority heritage asset classes

#### **5921 Thematic survey of rural schools: Norfolk**

An assessment of rural primary schools in Norfolk by the Norfolk Building Recording Group and the UEA to inform designation and management of these threatened buildings.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** The Norfolk Historic Buildings Group in collaboration with the University of East Anglia has produced a report commissioned by EH entitled 'Building an Education: An Historical and Architectural Study of Rural Schools and Schooling in Norfolk c 1800-1944'. The report was completed at the end of July 2012, and has been very well received.

It has been published in the Journal of the Norfolk Historic Buildings Group, Volume 5 by UEA Press in January 2013. Designation team have supported the project throughout and will act upon the findings of the survey by considering the best examples of the type for listing later in 2013.

### **6330 National assessment of public libraries outside London**

The project will deliver a national overview identifying and characterising public libraries of architectural and historical importance and the level of statutory protection afforded to them. The project will place these buildings in their wider context and inform designation decisions and other protection responses.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This project is being undertaken internally by EH. Outcomes will consist of two 'Introduction to Heritage Asset' (IHA) documents, and a report on the issues surrounding the protection and management of historic purpose-built libraries. A 'long list' of excellent unlisted examples of the type will be provided to be considered for potential listing.

**Date of completion:** Spring 2013.

### **6331 Drill halls: review and guidance**

The project will deliver a succinct historical and architectural review of volunteer and Territorial Army drill halls in England. It will be used to assess buildings of national and local significance, and will review the current threats to this class of buildings. The report will be published in the Research and Report series in the first instance, then as an IHA (Introduction to Heritage Asset), resources permitting.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project is well underway.

**Date of completion:** Spring 2013.

## Protection Result 4A4.3: Tools and capacity to help protect specific buildings

### **Emergency response to unforeseen threats to public, civic and communal buildings**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Information and advice was provided to assist with the upgrading of Fulham Town Hall. The Town Hall was upgraded from grade II to II\* earlier this year.

### **6332 Local Authority asset case studies**

Addition of ex-Local Authority building case studies to the existing Asset Transfer case studies on the EH website, together with good examples of conservation works to assets remaining in Local Authority ownership.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** A selection of new case studies and examples of best practice have now been uploaded onto the [HELM](#) website.

### **6341 Pilot heritage data project on courts facing closure**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** In 2010 the coalition government announced that a number of magistrates' and county courts across England would be discontinued. This decision was made in order to cut costs in the Ministry of Justice. The project involved selecting the law courts and creating individual records of them, which are available through Pastscape based upon information gathered through an architectural survey carried out by English Heritage. Research on individual law courts was also carried out to supplement this survey. Go to: <http://www.pastscape.org.uk/favicon.ico>

## ACTIVITY 4BI: HISTORIC WATER MANAGEMENT ASSETS

### Context

New EU Directives, domestic legislation and policy (e.g. Water Framework Directive, Flood and Water Act 2010 and Waste Water NPS) as well as demand to develop micro-renewable energy sites will place increasing pressure on a range of historic water management assets (mills, pumping stations, dams, weirs, flood meadows etc). Action will focus on completion of coverage for those

categories most at risk of major change and on ensuring minimal loss of significance (see also 2C1).

**Activity Lead:** Jen Heathcote, Historic Environment Intelligence Analyst (Environmental Impacts) ([jen.heathcote@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:jen.heathcote@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £103k

### Protection Result 4BI.1: Enhanced protection of priority asset classes

#### 6153 Pilot assessment of watermills and water supply systems (Herefordshire)

The project comprises a rapid assessment of a selection of watermills in order to a) enhance their Historic Environment Record descriptions and b) identify those for which more detailed field investigation is required to better understand their condition and significance. Particular attention will be paid to the watermill landscapes (i.e. the earthworks and ancillary features that form the mills' water supply system) in addition to the fabric of the mill buildings and their contained technology. The project will also serve as a pilot to test methods for data collection and HER enhancement using Society for the Protection of Ancient Buildings (SPAB: Mills Section) volunteers and as such will produce recommendations to support comparable projects elsewhere. It interfaces with projects conducted under Activity 4B2 Industry.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Good progress was made in the early part of 2012 but then fieldwork had to be put on hold due to unexpected circumstances. Consequently we extended the period over which the project will run, though the resource required remains unchanged. Since then, the project manager has left Herefordshire CC. We don't expect this to have significant impact on the remainder of the project as the County Archaeologist has made alternative provision of staff.

**Date of completion:** December 2013.

#### 6313 Watermill landscapes: national contextual overview

This project will provide an overview of watermill landscapes, together with an appraisal of the threats this type of heritage asset is increasingly facing, and how these might be dealt with. It will focus on promoting recognition of the complexes of structures and landscape modifications required to supply water to power watermills. It will also develop a basic field methodology or 'toolkit' for use by local communities and special interest groups in the understanding, investigation and recording of watermill landscapes. To that end it interfaces with project 6153 Watermills community pilot study, Herefordshire.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Good progress has been made and an interim report on threats to the watermill landscapes has been produced. One of the threats identified is from the installation of hydropower turbines, which is explored through case studies on New Mills (Derbyshire) and Bedford (Bedfordshire). The report examines a vast infrastructure of artificially modified rivers and associated historic structures and channels - formerly connected with watermills - that can potentially be re-used for micro-hydropower generation. The balance between threats to watermill landscapes and positive benefits of preservation through adaptation and re-use are explored.

**Date of completion:** September 2013.

#### 6319 Assessing historic weirs: Herefordshire

This project comprises an assessment of the character, value and significance of historic weirs in Herefordshire. Nationally, the threat of modification or adaptation of weirs has increased significantly in recent years and a number

of cases in Herefordshire provided the opportunity to run a pilot study to examine the issues in detail. It will help to develop the evidence base to assess significance for designation or other management strategies and help to articulate the value of these structures to other sectors. The project was designed in partnership by English Heritage, the Environment Agency (EA) and Herefordshire County Council (HCC).

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** High water-levels have continued to impact fieldwork required to examine the fabric of the case-studies; the project is now expected to report next year (2013/14). The project manager has left Herefordshire CC but oversight of the project has been taken over by the County Archaeologist.

**Date of completion:** September 2013.

### 6328 Guidance on Heritage Sensitive Water Meadow Conservation

The project will carry out a national threat and opportunity assessment and develop guidance on understanding the significance and protection issues for historic water meadows and develop/disseminate assessment and monitoring tools for use by owners, nature conservation sector and others interested in meadow habitat restoration; wet grassland communities associated with these features are a priority habitat for restoration and protection under the UK Biodiversity Action Plan.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The PD has been finalised and work is underway. Contact with key stakeholders has been made and their feedback will help inform the project. Possible dissemination mechanisms have been identified.

**Date of completion:** April 2013.

### 6342 Water and Sewage Industries

This project is intended to resolve a number of issues associated with the Water and Sewage Industries emerging from legacy projects within English Heritage, specifically the Monuments Protection Programme (MPP). The project will deliver a prioritised list of designation recommendations, derived from the outstanding recommendations of the MPP project, to be taken forward under Activity 5A1 of the NHPP. Prioritisation is primarily by site type, in order to help guide resources towards the elements of the industry which are under greatest threat (e.g. reservoirs). It is also intended that this project will provide a test of a methodology for bringing forward other legacy projects, particularly those associated with the terminated MPP.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The review has been completed to produce a long-list of sites for consideration. These were sorted by site-type so that follow-up work can prioritise types that are felt to be particularly under threat. A Draft Report has been submitted for comment; incorporation of comments and production of the final report will take place during April.

Subsequent work on taking forward the designation recommendations will occur in Activity 5A1 Strategic Designation whilst a supplementary piece of work will be needed elsewhere to refine understanding of the nature and timing of threat to the different categories of asset. It is likely that this will occur as a Supporting Action.

**Date of completion:** April 2013 – Report on Stage 1; Follow-on work tbc.

### 6343 Best practice guidance for micro-hydropower generation

This project will develop best practice guidance for micro-hydropower generation as part of the series on installation of micro-renewable energy generators (solar thermal; solar electric; wind) produced by English Heritage.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The first draft has been circulated for consultation with comments to be returned by the end of March.

**Date of completion:** 2013.

## ACTIVITY 4B2: TRADITIONAL INDUSTRY, MODERN INDUSTRY, MINING AND ASSOCIATED HOUSING

### Context

Smaller-scale traditional industries and twentieth-century industry are under pressure because of drastic changes in organisation and working practices. Subterranean mining remains are often of exceptional interest but are difficult to assess and protect and vulnerable to impending European water quality directives. Related, purpose-built workers' housing is threatened by redevelopment: in places, this may involve loss of important or rare examples of

early workers' housing, the core of many inner city communities. Action will focus on assessing these priorities and establishing realistic approaches to protection of the most significant.

**Activity Lead:** Tony Calladine, Designation Team Leader (East) ([tony.calladine@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:tony.calladine@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £442k

### Protection Result 4B2.1: Improved protection of national classes of asset

#### **4864 National industrial surveys: England's Atomic Age**

The project will deliver technical guidance on recording the heritage of Britain's nuclear industry in the context of consideration of the key complexes and buildings associated with this crucially important period in our history.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Reports on individual sites with entries in AMIE are being produced.

**Date of completion:** April 2014.

#### **6333 Roller Mills: national survey**

Emanating from the Industrial Thematic Research Strategy consultation this project would quantify the survival of steam and roller corn mills and assess the significance of the resource. IHAR and 20th century food industry relevance.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** An extension of 15 days has been agreed in order to enter data onto the AMIE database. The project report and archive have been received and are being assessed.

**Date of completion:** April 2013.

#### **6379 Wind and water mills: regional samples**

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** A project proposal has been received and pending satisfactory incorporation of EH recommended changes will be taken forward to project design stage.

**Date of completion:** April 2015.

## Protection Result 4B2.2: Improved protection for geographical asset groups and specific assets

### 2552 Ecton Mines

Project to produce a record, an assessment of significance and a Conservation Statement for above and below ground remains of one of the most important metal mines in England.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The Ecton copper mine work is at publication stage: it is drafted and has been out to readers. It is currently with the designers with publication due in 2013. Specialist articles will follow in 2013-2014.

**Date of completion:** 2014.

### 2745 Exmoor Iron

Project on Roman, medieval and early modern iron mining and processing in Exmoor National Park.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This project is stalled pending agreement over the deposition of finds and follow-up research with external parties.

### 4796 Assessing industrial buildings and complexes: Lancashire Textile Mills

The project comprises a county-wide external project ascertaining the condition and current protection of 600+ textile mills in Lancashire. It will allow assessment of significance and inform better management, promote re-use where applicable and inform designation.

The project is entering its second stage and aims to expand the informed baseline by providing a detailed record of selected examples of surviving textile-manufacturing sites, thus providing definitive baseline data of the various building types, and engage with the various stakeholders involved in the decision making for the future management and use of the buildings. It is also envisaged that the project will enhance the conclusions drawn from the Mills Conservation Deficit Study, commissioned recently by English Heritage.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** 50 mills have been selected for detailed assessment and a tranche of 10 or so will subsequently be forwarded for designation assessment. Some designation assessment has already been undertaken where urgency is needed. Access to some sites is not straightforward and this has delayed the project.

### 5299 Assessing industrial sites and landscapes: Wealden Glass Industry

This project aims to investigate the medieval and early post-medieval glass industry in the Weald of Surrey and Sussex. This industry was of national importance but there remain a number of major gaps in our understanding. Many manufacturing sites are unrecorded, there is uncertainty surrounding the current condition and exact location of many of the known sites, and a lack of knowledge of the technological development of the industry and its products through time all preclude assessing significance.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** A project design has now been drafted for the final stage and drawing the project to a close, especially in the light of work that has been undertaken on the Staffordshire glass industry. A small number of sites will be pinpointed and assessed/recorded and that will form the context within which the broader general conclusions will be drawn.

**Date of completion:** 2014.

### 5534 Lake District Industry

Internal project synthesising and publishing the results of 20 years of various industrial heritage projects in the Lake District.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Some of the material that has been completed will be published as journal articles.





Boon & Lane Ltd, hatting factory, Luton, Bedfordshire. Photo by Steve Cole, © English Heritage.

### **6085 Luton's industrial quarter: assessment of significance**

The project aims to provide the basis for appropriate inclusion of heritage considerations in strategic planning for the Plaiters' Lea Conservation Area, designated on the basis of its importance to the hat-making industry in the region. It will also take a wider view of the impact of the hat industry on the historic environment of Luton and its hinterland. It will result in an Informed Conservation volume.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** An Informed Conservation publication on the hatting industry will be published in 2013.

### **6348 NRIM into the NRHE**

Recording from the National Record of Industrial Monuments to enhance the NRHE and HERs.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** The project was completed in November 2012. An end of project report is awaited.

**Date of completion:** November 2012.

## ACTIVITY 4B3: TRANSPORT AND COMMUNICATIONS

### Context

Development of transport and communications has had a profound impact on the historic environment. Landscapes, buildings and structures associated with transport are under-appreciated and subject to rapid and wholesale change. Constant change within the transport industries routinely requires intervention to historic fabric. Action will focus on delivering

adequate understanding and appreciation of that fabric for appropriate management of road, rail and canal transport heritage.

**Activity Lead:** John Minnis, Senior Investigator ([john.minnis@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:john.minnis@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £185k

### 4B3.1: Enhanced protection of significant assets

#### 4865 The Motor Car and the Historic Environment

Completion of Car Project including completion of Carscapes book (publication through Yale UP) and research and writing of England's Motoring Heritage from the Air.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Carscapes was published in November 2012. England's Motoring Heritage from the Air completed and currently awaiting editing at English Heritage Publishing.

**Date of completion:** Awaiting publication date for aerial photo book.

#### 6336 Railway Buildings national review

Review of Thematic Study of Listing Railway Buildings in the context of the current Selection Guide, audit of buildings and structures on heritage railways.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Tendering process complete. RPS Group commissioned. Preliminary meeting held with contractor; work to commence April 2013.

**Date of completion:** January 2014.

#### 6352 Assessing national transport infrastructure: railway signalling

Comprehensive change to the way in which railway signalling is managed will see very significant reduction in the number of remaining signal-boxes. This project will undertake a rapid desk-based significance assessment of some 500 surviving signal boxes, and review of the existing list and assessment for designation of additional buildings where appropriate.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Report assessing significance completed and published on EH website. 50 boxes currently being assessed for designation. A list of another 69 significant boxes, not selected for assessment, prepared and circulated to stakeholders.

**Date of completion:** Project Complete (designation continues).

#### 6670 Heritage assets in inland waters: an appraisal of their significance and protection

Heritage assets under inland waters have received relatively little attention. They are currently threatened by a variety of man-made and natural interventions, notably flood control measures. This project seeks to review and assess the significance of submerged assets, to outline the possible hazards to them and to consider the potential of increasing awareness of them. It is a pilot project to scope the issues and focuses on the Kennet/Avon catchment, encompassing rivers, both navigable and unimproved, and canals.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Start-up meeting to be held 26/27 March and project will then commence.

**Date of completion:** August 2013.

## ACTIVITY 4CI: SPORT AND ENTERTAINMENT BUILDINGS AND LANDSCAPES

### Context

Although knowledge of sports buildings has improved in recent years, there are still many classes of leisure buildings and landscapes, many of which have a high communal value, requiring study to underpin heritage protection and management decisions. They are often under-appreciated and under-protected, and are facing acute redevelopment pressures. Action will focus on poorly-understood and threatened classes

of buildings and landscapes associated with sport and leisure, including overviews of racecourses and seaside amusement parks.

**Activity Lead:** Tony Calladine, Designation Team Leader (East) ([tony.calladine@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:tony.calladine@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £52k

### Protection Result 4CI.1: Enhanced protection of significant assets

#### 5260 Bowled Over

A 'Played in...' series publication on British bowling greens to provide an enhanced appreciation of this popular aspect of our sporting heritage.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This project has been delayed by the Olympics publication. Production work on the book should begin in the Spring of 2013 with publication by the end of 2013.

**Date of completion:** December 2013.

#### 6354 National assessment of amusements and rides

A national assessment of historic seaside and fairground rides and public play and recreation structures to provide a context for the assessment of spot-listing requests and to inform management strategies for these endangered structures.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** This project was to be done mostly under 4A3, but a restriction in staff time available has meant that only 25 days are now committed as opposed to the 100 or so envisaged. This will get a product with some pointers as to the way forward which will appear in Spring 2013. We will then determine what happens next.

### Protection Result 4CI.2: Statutory designations relating to the 2012 London Olympics

#### 5594 Played in London publication project

A Designation follow-through project drawing on the 'Played in London' publication and likely resulting in the listing of about 15 historic sports-related buildings and structures in London. This will be one of our corporate contributions to the heritage celebration of the 2012 London Olympics.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Publication now due in summer 2013. A number of buildings highlighted by the book will be assessed for designation.

**Date of completion:** Summer 2013.

## ACTIVITY 4DI: PLACES OF WORSHIP

### Context

Much is known of Christian places of worship, but particular and urgent issues include significant threat to interiors, substantial loss of poorly understood assets in some areas, poor understanding of the scale of loss and lack of synthesis available to evaluate relative significance. Furthermore, the heritage of many non-Christian faiths is very poorly understood, but with increasing cultural diversity in British society this heritage is making an expanding contribution to the built environment. Action will focus on understanding

the significance and values of the heritage of places of worship and encouraging the engagement of a more diverse range of building owners and cultural groups in the historic environment.

**Activity Lead:** Linda Monckton, Historic Environment Intelligence Analyst (Social Impacts) ([Linda.monckton@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:Linda.monckton@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £541k

### Protection Result 4DI.2: Improved protection of non-Christian places of worship

#### 5981 National thematic survey of Islamic faith Buildings

The project will deliver a national thematic survey of mosques in Britain with a major inventory of sites and thematic assessments of periods of development since 1889. The main output will be an English Heritage publication, and the inventory will be reviewed for potential for designation and for the contribution towards assessment of significance of C20th places of worship more widely.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The draft text of the book has been produced and reviewed. It is currently undergoing an edit stage. The final draft is due March 2013. The book will then enter into publications programme and timetable.

**Date of completion:** March 2013.

#### 6340 Scoping survey of non-Christian faith buildings

This project will scope and assess current knowledge of buildings and relevant practices of minority non-Christian faith groups to enable EH and the sector to develop its expertise and protect appropriately.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** An initial scoping study has been carried out using an internal resource and a planned programme for follow-on is being developed and now also in tandem with 6749.

**Date of completion:** April 2013.

#### 6749 Scoping survey of non-Christian faith buildings

This project will scope and assess current knowledge of buildings and relevant practices of minority non-Christian faith groups to enable EH and the sector to develop its expertise and protect appropriately.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** A Project Design has been commissioned for a scoping survey of Buddhist faith buildings.

**Date of completion:** April 2013.

## Protection Result 4DI.3: Collaborative assessments of significance

### **5100 Taking Stock: Roman Catholic churches of Salford**

This programme, developed in close partnership with (and with joint funding from) the relevant Roman Catholic dioceses, comprises a series of reviews identifying significance and sensitivity of Roman Catholic parish churches. The reports consider the listed status or listability of these buildings (generally under-represented in the statutory lists) as well as their sensitivity to change, both in the context of continued use or in the event of closure.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Part of the RC national collaborative survey 'Taking Stock'.

This project has begun and although submitted as a grant application later than hoped is now progressing well.

**Date of completion:** December 2013.

### **5633 Taking Stock: Assessing the significance of Roman Catholic places of worship, RC Diocese of Westminster**

This programme, developed in close partnership with (and with joint funding from) the relevant Roman Catholic dioceses, comprises a series of reviews identifying significance and sensitivity of Roman Catholic parish churches. The reports consider the listed status or listability of these buildings (generally under-represented in the statutory lists) as well as their sensitivity to change, both in the context of continued use or in the event of closure.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Part of the RC national collaborative survey 'Taking Stock'.

**Date of completion:** February 2013.

### **6097 Taking Stock: Assessing the significance of Roman Catholic places of worship, RC Diocese of Hexham and Newcastle**

This programme, developed in close partnership with (and with joint funding from) the relevant Roman Catholic dioceses, comprises a series of reviews identifying significance and sensitivity of Roman Catholic parish churches. The reports consider the listed status or listability of these buildings (generally under-represented in the statutory lists) as well as their sensitivity to change, both in the context of continued use or in the event of closure.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Part of the RC national collaborative survey 'Taking Stock'.

**Date of completion:** December 2012.

### **6785 Chapels of England: national overview**

The production of a book to produce the first substantial synoptic account of Nonconformist church architecture in England.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Text for book due currently Spring 2013. Staff resource for photography in place for 2013/14. Although some slippage since originally commissioned this is now timetabled.

**Date of completion:** January 2014.



Oulton Chapel, Oulton, Norfolk Part of the Chapels of England project. Photo by Patricia Payne, © English Heritage.



Congregational Chapel, Roxton, Bedfordshire. Part of the Chapels of England project. Photo by Patricia Payne, © English Heritage.

**Methodist Chapels in Cornwall: guidance**

Production of guidance in conjunction with the Local Authority and Methodist Church.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Guidance emerged directly from long held collaborative work in Cornwall by EH considering survival of, use of and threats to Methodist chapels in Cornwall.

This guidance will inform a strategic approach to this increasingly acute problem. It will help planners and all interested parties, including applicants and local communities: Consider the importance of chapels as heritage assets, places of worship and community facilities; plan for the changes required to secure their future and will help direct grants for urgent works for all listed chapels in use.

**Date of completion:** Completed and published December 2012..

## Protection Result 4DI.4: Improved protection for significant historic interiors of places of worship

**6356 Victorian church seating**

Regional or thematic survey of church seating to assess survival, rarity and significance within the most threatened area of Victorian seating.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Brief failed at point of tender. Revisions to address availability of current data due to take place early in FY 2013.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

**6649 Devon's ancient bench ends monograph**

Text of the first in-depth study of ancient bench ends in Devon, raising the profile of a significantly understudied resource in the West Country and contributing towards the objectives of a larger project on the historic interior.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** This was a small grant application towards a publication. The project included the promotion of the significance of seating as a follow-on to publication and the book sets the Devon material in a West Country context. The text will contribute towards the project on church seating and historic interiors.

**Date of completion:** December 2012.

## ACTIVITY 4D2: CHURCHYARDS, CEMETERIES AND BURIAL GROUNDS

### Context

Extant or visible historic burial grounds and other commemorative locales, significant both at a personal and historic level for local and faith communities, are under threat from vandalism, neglect and development pressure. Their full heritage significance (monumental, design and archaeological heritage values) is often poorly understood, especially for the period after 1500. Knowledge of earlier cemeteries is much better as a result of archaeological investigations, but the basis for

protection lies primarily through policy (Ministry of Justice licences, church Faculties and Pastoral Measures etc.), and a clearer articulation of significance is required.

**Activity Lead:** Linda Monckton, Historic Environment Intelligence Analyst (Social Impacts) ([Linda.monckton@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:Linda.monckton@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £240k

### Protection Result 4D2.1: Improved approaches to assessing significance

#### 6357 Assessment Case Studies for Protection

The project aims to deliver significance assessments, designations and enhanced Historic Environment Records for c. 30 sample cemetery sites, split geographically, chronologically, by faith, type and functional specialisation and prioritised by development pressure. The outcomes will feed into national significance assessment guidance allowing local people to develop understanding of the significance (and enhance protection) of the historic cemeteries in their community.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The tender for this project has been awarded and the project has begun.

**Date of completion:** January 2014.

### Protection Result 4D2.2: Local communities better equipped to assess their burial heritage

#### 6358 Developing Local Assessment and Monitoring Toolkits

This project aims to build a freely available toolkit for recording, assessing significance of, and monitoring the condition of historic cemeteries. Many local groups enjoy recording gravestones and monuments and the project aims to help them do this in a way in which the data can contribute nationally to an overall picture of the importance and condition of our historic burial grounds and graveyards. The project will assess current practice in conjunction with local and special interest groups, and then assess how best to marry structure with national data systems before developing an online capability.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The tender for the project has been awarded and the project is set up.

**Date of completion:** August 2013.



## Protection Result 4D2.3: Enhanced protection of historic non-Christian cemeteries

### **6359 Assessment and protection of non-Christian (principally Jewish) historic cemeteries**

Significance assessments, designations and enhanced HER records for 25 historic (primarily) Jewish cemeteries with specific aim of incorporating elements of self assessment and capture of communal value.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Project Design in final stages of completion in preparation for internal project start early in 2013/14.

**Date of completion:** January 2015.

## Protection Result 4D2.4: Designation of nationally significant monuments within registered cemeteries

### **6385 Designation enhancement of monuments within cemeteries**

Review of priority cemeteries where monuments need addressing, prioritisation of workstream, relevant additional research, designation upgrades and entry into UDS.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Lack of staff resource means this project has not started in this year as planned.

**Date of completion:** Unknown at present.

## ACTIVITY 4EI: BATTLEFIELDS

### Context

Recent investigation has demonstrated that spatial location of terrestrial battlefields in England requires closer care and better definition of accuracy. Without this, the management regimes necessary to protect the setting of the battles and/or their diffuse material culture cannot be established. Action should focus on

assessment to locate, identify and characterise the archaeological nature of terrestrial and sea battlefields.

**Activity Lead:** Nick Bridgland, Designation Team Leader, North ([nick.bridgland@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:nick.bridgland@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £127k

### Protection Result 4EI.1: Appropriate consideration of naval battle remains in marine planning

#### 6386 Naval battle records

The project will comprise a data audit and desk-based assessment of the resources available to support our understanding of naval battlefields within the EH remit of territorial waters and coastal/intertidal areas with a view to refining location and permitting options for management to be more widely considered.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The project is proceeding largely according to the project design. An issue of relating to legacy wreck records (now resolved) slowed progress.

**Date of completion:** July 2013.

### Protection Result 4EI.2: Improved management of English battlefield archaeology

#### 3808 Conflict in the Pre-Industrial Landscape

Completion of review of pre-industrial battle sites with recommendations for refinement of designation and management.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Published as a CBA Research Report <http://www.archaeologyuk.org/books/foard2012>

#### 6361 Archaeology of pre-C16th battles

Investigation and analysis of a number of pre-C16 battlefields to establish the character of survival of material and the factors which have an impact on this survival

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** No progress has been made on developing this project. No project manager has been identified for what will be a broad-ranging multidisciplinary project.

#### 6363 Siege Sites

Collaborative Doctoral Award or similar to examine practicalities of assessment and protection of siege sites.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Grant for studentship – student is in post at the University of Huddersfield.

**Date of completion:** Early 2016.

**6387 Land Battle Records**

Audit of our data holdings for pre 16th century terrestrial battlefields, with a rapid enhancement of the national record (AMIE) to ensure that the national record reflects more recent existing research, to complement the Register of Battlefields and to serve as a platform for further research.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Pre 16th Century battlefields is complete, all the information that we agreed with the Battlefields Trust has been recorded in the NRHE.

**6388 Proactive review of 5 sites pa**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This project has been transferred to 5A2 – Designation Upgrade – sites have been identified and programming is underway.

**Date of completion:** Early 2016.

## ACTIVITY 4E2: TWENTIETH-CENTURY MILITARY HERITAGE

### Context

The evidence base for twentieth-century military heritage is extensive; a number of priorities remain to be addressed to develop understanding of significance and permit informed protection of the most important. All are affected by piecemeal losses and lack of knowledge. Action will focus on Ministry of Defence disposals, First World War heritage, and specific themes

such as communications, temporary airfields, aircraft crash sites and Cold War installations.

**Activity Lead:** Wayne Cocroft, Senior Investigator ([wayne.cocroft@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:wayne.cocroft@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £346k

### Protection Result 4E2.1: Appropriate protection strategies for significant MoD defence estates planned for disposal

#### 6365 Defence disposals: assessment of key sites

This project will deliver assessments of significance for designation, planning advice and enhanced national dataset records of MoD sites considered for disposal as part of the Strategic Defence Review. A pilot project in Wiltshire has developed the methodology and provided the basis for stakeholder engagement and the national roll-out is underway.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Assessment reports have been completed for St Georges Barracks, Waterbeach, Cambridgeshire; Daws Hill, Buckinghamshire; Foxhill, Bath; Warminster Road, Bath; and Ensleigh, Bath; DSL Beaconsfield, Buckinghamshire, and RAF Welford, Berkshire. Reports are in preparation on Arborfield, Berkshire; Deepcut, Berkshire; Shorncliffe, Kent; Bordon Hampshire; Turnchapel, Plymouth, and Ashchurch, Gloucestershire. Liaison with the Defence Infrastructure Organisation is ongoing.

Site records are being completed and updated, and if warranted designation assessments are being undertaken. AMIE records have been made publicly available through [PastScape](#).

**Date of completion:** Ongoing project to provide the Defence Infrastructure Organisation with advice on forthcoming disposals.

#### 6699 Corsham Mines – monitoring and recording of paintings and sites

English Heritage is working with the Ministry of Defence to safeguard key historic assets within the former Bath stone quarry. In part this comprises regular liaison meetings and monitoring visits. Conditions are being documented by ongoing photographic surveys.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** English Heritage photographers continue to document the mine, especially in areas of adverse environmental conditions. A number of key artefacts have been moved to environmentally controlled conditions at Dover Castle.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing project to manage key historic areas within the mine.

## Protection Result 4E2.2: Enhanced protection for surviving significant 20th-century military sites

### **6113 The Home Front (1914-1918): the archaeology of First World War legacies in Britain**

This project seeks to establish a methodology for volunteer and community-based identification and recording programmes of the impact of the First World War on the Home Front.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** A contract has been let to the Universities of Bristol and York to develop a methodology for a community based project to document the legacies of the First World War on the home front. Pilot studies are being undertaken in Essex and Staffordshire.

This work will inform a CBA led bid to the HLF for a large volunteer based recording project 2014-18.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

### **6366 Civil Defence**

The project aims to produce an Informed Conservation guidance note detailing the different types of Civil Defence structures and guidance on how their significance can be assessed. A project proposal and project design have been completed.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Project documentation is in place, but no progress has been made due to the redeployment of a member of staff with the specialist knowledge necessary to undertake this work.

### **6367 Aircraft Crash Sites**

Through partnership projects it will seek to improve the representation of crash sites on HERs and on AMIE. It is envisaged that the HERs might use volunteer groups to compile data. This project will also promote the appreciation and appropriate management of military aircraft crash sites. To complement this project it is intended to revise the guidance note on aircraft crash sites.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Kent Historic Environment Record has agreed to host a volunteer based trial project to record aircraft crash sites in Kent. A project design has been completed and work will start shortly.

Records to permit monitoring of sites and improved acknowledgement in the planning system.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing project to be rolled out to other HERs.

### **6368 First World War heritage: The Home Front 1914-1918**

Review of previous studies of First World War sites to identify any significant and undesignated sites, and knowledge and protection gaps: where significance is understood this may lead to designation assessments.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** A staged programme to enhance the records of selected classes of First World War sites for the National Record of the Historic Environment has started. Work has also begun to document the location and brief histories of the wartime National Factories.

**Date of completion:** March 2015.

### 6370 Temporary Airfields

A review to establish the survival and condition of Second World War temporary airfield landscapes and buildings has been commissioned. With partners, this will be used to develop strategies for their conservation.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The Airfield Research Group has completed the first stage of this work a report on the survival and condition of Second World War airfields in England.

The report will allow local authorities to assess the significance of airfields in their areas. It will also be used as the basis of an English Heritage guidance note on the conservation of this type of airfield.

**Date of completion:** March 2015.

### 6392 Cold War heritage

The project aims to review the recommendations in *Cold War Monuments: An Assessment* completed during the Monuments Protection Programme (2001), so that national designation assessments can be concluded. The national database will also be enhanced.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** 11 designation assessment visits have been made to locations at Biggin Hill, Greater London; Foulness, Essex; North Weald, Essex; RAF Barkston Heath, Lincolnshire; North Luffenham, Rutland; RAF Spadeadam, Cumbria; Frodsham, Cheshire; Shrewsbury; Politmore, Devon; Bristol, and Manchester. Consultation and advice reports are at various stages of completion.



Defence Science & Technology Laboratories, Fort Halstead, Sevenoaks, Kent. Photo by Derek Kendall, © English Heritage.

At Fort Halstead, Kent, pioneering atomic research work has been recognised by listing and scheduling. Sections of the Central Government War Headquarters, Corsham, Wilts, have been scheduled and earlier wartime murals listed. The War Room at Bristol and the Anti Aircraft Operations Room, Frodsham, Cheshire, have been listed at Grade II.

Records on AMIE for Spadeadam and Foulness have been enhanced.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

#### **6586 East coast war channel 1914-18 and 1939-45**

This report will address the creation and use of the East Coast War Channels in the First and Second World Wars, a largely unrecognised heritage. These channels were the areas used by shipping between the East Coast and the defensive minefields laid to protect against attack. The project will consider the largely invisible seascapes of defensive minefields and the War Channels, the infrastructure used to create and maintain them, to facilitate navigation and defend against attack, and the wrecks of the ships and aircraft.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The Project Design has been completed and the work commissioned.

The project will review current survival of heritage assets in this area and factors affecting their future. The project will also review data sources that may be used later to improve records. Additionally, it will examine public authorities and private associations whose activities affect the management of these wrecks. It also aims to inform commercial and leisure users of this area about the significance of these historic assets.

**Date of completion:** June 2013.

## Protection Result 4E2.3: Enhanced evidence context for C20th military heritage

#### **5153 Monuments of War: Diver**

The project aims to complete a publication on defences related to the German V1 rocket campaign.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The final draft has been received and commented on and returned to the author for completion. The final manuscript is expected to be delivered to EH Publications in April 2013.

This publication will provide a national context for the assessment and protection of defence sites related to the German V1 rocket campaigns.

**Date of completion:** 2013.

#### **6111 Monuments of War: Sheltering Britain**

The project aims to complete a publication on Civil Defence.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** This publication will provide a national context for the assessment and protection of Civil Defence related structures.

**Date of completion:** 2015.

## ACTIVITY 4FI: RURAL HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND THEIR SETTINGS

### Context

Understanding of significance of more modest rural buildings, especially agricultural buildings, rural vernacular buildings and smaller country houses and their associated landscapes is based on an insufficient knowledge base. The pressure of change has never been more acute. Significance is threatened by changes in farming practice, changing demographics and lifestyle expectations, fragmentation of estates, and the impact of new housing on the historic character of

rural settlements. Action should focus on developing and understanding the significance of these less-well understood heritage assets, and provide tools to help owners and planners manage them.

**Activity Lead:** Jeremy Lake, Historic Environment Intelligence Analyst (Resources Impacts) ([jeremy.lake@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:jeremy.lake@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £605k

This activity focuses on understanding the full range of rural buildings that are an integral part of the English landscape, including country houses and villas, farmhouses and farm buildings, cottages, estate and council housing. Our knowledge is patchy, and the landscape and settlement context of this rich inheritance of buildings has rarely been considered – from the industrialised landscapes of the north east, with its distinctive estate housing and mechanised farmsteads, to the medieval fieldscapes, houses and farmsteads of the Kent and Sussex Weald.

We want to develop new ways of informing appropriate levels of protection for rural buildings and their settings, from identification of those that make a positive contribution to the local scene (for local communities and planners) to informing the agri-environment schemes (by far the biggest provider of grant aid to rural buildings) and transparent standards for designation. We also want to ensure that our detailed survey is targeted to priority areas and buildings. Projects will range from the strategic, including those that help to boost the capacity of county Historic Environment Records and support the work of volunteer groups, to detailed survey.

### Protection Result 4FI.1: Better protection of farmsteads and farming landscapes through strategic assessment and guidance tools

#### **6373 Farmsteads and landscapes statements for the National Character Areas**

These have been developed as illustrated statements which will help users understand the historic character, significance and pressures for change for each of England's National Character Areas, which are used by those making decisions that can affect the rural environment including the delivery of the agri-environment schemes. These NCAs are being used in conjunction with the Farmsteads Assessment Template. These and other data (developed under Agriculture and Forestry Impacts in 2D1) will complement and provide support to Natural England's revision of the NCAs. They are providing a framework for a Field Systems team (4F2) project, which aims to provide a database and guidance on fields throughout England and the NCAs, and EH feedback and supporting evidence to inform revision of the National Character Areas (NCAs) under *Agriculture and Forestry Impacts* (2D1).

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project is due for completion in June 2014. It is now envisaged as a project which provides mutual support to Natural England's revision of the National Character Areas.

**Date of completion:** June 2014.



70 areas are nearly complete as draft PDFs. In order to secure best value contractor input is focused on the supply of images, maps and text for farmstead and building types for the remaining 79 areas, batched for completion by autumn 2013. These will then be integrated into a final edit stage for the project, in close liaison with other 4FI activities, 4F2 and 2D1. These are all at planning/ brief stage as set out below.

### **6578 Farmsteads and landscapes statements: Cornwall and Devon**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** For 16 areas in Devon/Cornwall/West Somerset, linked to production of Farmstead Assessment Guidance for Cornwall.

**Date of completion:** December 2013.

### **6579 Farmsteads and landscapes statements: Northern England**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** For supply of photos and contribution to texts, and supply of map orders, for remaining parts of northern England and the north Midlands (39 areas).

**Date of completion:** October 2013.

### **6580 Farmsteads and landscapes statements: National overview**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** National coordination/overview and supply of maps, together with statement/images for East Anglia (10 areas) and remaining parts of south west England (6 areas).

**Date of completion:** October 2013.

### **6581 Farmsteads and landscapes statements: PDF production**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Production of maps and PDFs for 79 areas, and editing in 2014 of the initial batch of 70 which NHPP has now inherited.

**Date of completion:** June-October 2014

### **6372 Farmsteads assessment framework**

This has been developed to inform an understanding of the character, significance and potential for change of farmsteads, so that decisions about locally specific spatial planning, land management and economic development are clear, consistent and tailored to their future conservation and use. It comprises:

- a. Templates for Area and Site Assessment Framework which will help applicants for planning and listed building consent identify any issues at the critical pre-application stage in the planning process.
- b. Farmsteads Character Statements that provide more detailed illustrated guidance on farmstead and building types, and which will also be of interest to individuals and communities with an interest in understanding the character and development of farmsteads and places.
- c. Guidance on Recording and Research which will summarise the main issues to consider when undertaking more detailed recording of a site, with a case study and research questions to guide the survey and assessment process.
- d. Design Guidance which is intended to help applicants who are then considering how to achieve successful design, including new-build where it is considered appropriate and fitted to local plan policy.

This will be issued as a working document in June 2013, with national assessment guidance (including new standardised terminology) and links to area and site templates and completed assessments including:

- The Kent Farmsteads Guidance which will be published as SPD and has been delayed due to an overhaul of their website and staff changes.

- The Worcestershire Farmsteads Guidance funded by the West Midland Team, and other non-NHPP initiatives which will be published with the Assessment Framework.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The document needs publication of the Kent Farmsteads Guidance which has been delayed due to an overhaul of their website and staff changes. This is now expected for June 2013.

It will be updated as the templates are used and adopted for local guidance in England.

**Date of completion:** June 2013.

### 6583 Farmsteads assessment guidance for Staffordshire

The key product will be *Farmsteads and Rural Buildings Assessment Guidance* for Staffordshire which uses the Assessment Framework.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** To commence in May 2013.

**Date of completion:** December 2013.

### 6469 Derbyshire and Peak Upland farmsteads demonstration project

This proposal results from discussions between English Heritage, the Peak National Park, Staffordshire Moorlands and High Peak local authorities. Completion of the mapping of farmstead character and change across the Derbyshire part of the Peak, following the methodology adopted for the Staffordshire part which formed part of the West Midlands Farmsteads and Landscapes Project, will be followed by consideration of key issues with stakeholders and then enhancement of planning tools and local guidance using the Assessment Framework template.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Mapping Module now underway, due for completion by June 2013, and the other modules to commence after a workshop with key stakeholders in the Peak.

**Date of completion:** June 2013 (module 1).

### 6584 Lincolnshire farmsteads and rural buildings

This project will develop, through rapid mapping and case studies, the evidence base for historic farmsteads and isolated farm buildings across Lincolnshire and then develop planning tools using the Assessment Framework template.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Commencing in May 2013, in consultation with partners in Lincolnshire.

**Date of completion:** October 2014.

### 6757 Parks, Gardens and Estates Assessment Guidance

The walled gardens project will be completed in 2012 (see Phase III on <http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/professional/advice/advice-by-topic/parks-and-gardens/walled-gardens/>). Priorities for other categories are being set out.

This aims to inform and encourage the systematic assessment and recording of historic park and estate buildings and features, building on the completion of the walled gardens project.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This is at Project Design stage, pending completion of a Natural England project on stewardship funding.

**Date of completion:** 2015.

## Protection Result 4FI.2: Enhanced protection of significant historic assets and places

Projects under this heading fall into the category of those areas and building types that are:

1. least understood and are most sensitive to change,
2. least well-protected through designation, as identified through the 2010 Cherry-Chitty report on list coverage and other work such as the Farmsteads Mapping,
3. the least well-resourced to manage the types and levels of change that are expected in the future.

Projects will focus on understanding the character, significance and potential for change of rural buildings, through desk-based evaluation and targeted survey. This approach is consistent with national planning policy and guidance, which encourages local authorities to develop approaches towards rural development (including the sustainable re-use of rural buildings) that are fully informed and reflect local circumstances and needs. They will be developed in partnership with county HERs (supporting them in their key 'hub' role), local authorities, community groups, protected landscapes (National Parks and AONBs). There is a significant opportunity to use the results of completed projects (e.g. West Midlands Farmsteads and Landscapes Project; Rape of Hastings work), and also to revisit stalled thematic listing projects in order to develop clear benchmarks of significance which will help assess the significance of farmsteads by English Heritage and local authorities for protection and provide community groups and individuals with a starting point to investigate this aspect. Collaboration and buy-in from vernacular and other buildings historians will also deliver good value. A variety of projects is at proposal stage and will be reported upon in the next NHPP report.

### **4580 Rape of Hastings historic buildings**

The project comprises the analysis, synthesis and publication of a large sample of pre-1750 houses within the Rape of Hastings recorded by David and Barbara Martin (a nationally renowned survey). The final project outputs from Stage 2 comprise: stand-alone reports on the rural houses in the Rape of Hastings and houses within the historic villages in the Rape of Hastings, a fully illustrated synthetic monograph covering rural, village and town houses in the eastern High Weald and an integrated on-line database and an illustrated manual of terminology for building elements.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Text returned by readers and now at final edit stage.

**Date of completion:** 2014 (monograph).

### **5104 Wiltshire Buildings Dendrochronology**

This is a county-wide dendrochronology project focusing on early halls in Wiltshire and being taken forward by the Wiltshire Building Record, due for completion at the end of April 2012. It completes a sequence of similar county-wide dendrochronology projects covering the south west.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Completed and results will be integrated into Wiltshire HER and used to inform revisions to designation later in the NHPP plan period.

**Date of completion:** April 2012.

### **5239 Lake District Villas**

The villas of the English Lake District form much the largest national concentration of rural (rather than peri-urban) villas, and had a crucial role in transforming the vernacular landscape and in large part establishing modern landscape character. The project aims to establish the extent of the designation deficit, stimulate wider public interest and support the ongoing Lake District Cultural Landscape WHS.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** This is at Project Design stage, but it has been severely delayed due to ongoing commitments.



Former Explosives Factory, Cliffe, Hoo Peninsula. Kent. Taken for Hoo Peninsula project.. Photo by Steve Cole, © English Heritage.

### 5733 Hoo Peninsula

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Work is proceeding on the project monograph and a list of buildings and sites for national and local designation put forward.

**Date of completion:** December 2013.

### 5933 Thematic survey: Wiltshire Farmsteads

The Wiltshire Farmsteads Mapping Project, a partnership between the Wiltshire Building Record and Wiltshire Council, will map all farmsteads present on the 2nd Edition 25" map of c1900, record farmstead date based on surviving recorded buildings and the extent of change through comparison with modern mapping forming an important evidence base for all surviving historic farmsteads in the Wiltshire Council and Borough of Swindon Unitary Authority areas which can be used to develop and support planning policy and decision making.

The project will inform and support the work of the Wiltshire Buildings Record and so offers the opportunity to positively engage with the public and promote research into and the conservation of the historic environment in Wiltshire.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Mapping of farmsteads across the Wiltshire and Swindon areas has been completed. A total of 6802 sites have been recorded and reports are now with key partners in order to inform a short follow-on project which will ensure that the results of this project are integrated into the HER and WBR, guide the work of planners and volunteers and are fully disseminated. Work (including a May 2012 study day) with Wiltshire Buildings Record (WBS) volunteers has highlighted the need for field guidance to help recorders convey an understanding of the overall character of sites as a basis for deepening as required.

**Date of completion:** April 2013.

**5992 Thematic survey: Kent Farmsteads**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** The project has recorded 5526 farmsteads, 2069 outfarms and field barns and 150 detached oast houses not directly associated with a farmstead group across Kent. It has enhanced the county HER, and contributed towards:

- The Dover Heritage Strategy, which is underpinning its Core Strategy,
- Farmsteads Guidance for Tunbridge Wells Borough, which has used the Farmsteads Assessment template,
- The Kent Farmsteads Guidance which is expected to be discussed at committee stage in Kent County Council in June 2013.

**Date of completion:** April 2013.

**6380 Informed Conservation: North Pennines**

This aims to raise awareness and advocate the protection of the historic environment in the North Pennines and the Mendips, through summarising the results of 3-year projects that have combined architectural with archaeological field survey.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Text written and now edited.

**Date of completion:** 2014.

**6381 Mendip community planning guidance**

This aims to raise awareness and advocate the protection of the historic environment in the North Pennines and the Mendips, through summarising the results of 3-year projects that have combined architectural with archaeological field survey.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This has been changed from Informed Conservation: Mendips to Community Planning Guidance: Mendips, which will develop community planning tools and reflect the fact that much of this project developed in close liaison with local volunteers, complementing the publication of the Mendips survey as a monograph. A PD has been written and distributed for a project expected to commence in summer 2013.

**Date of completion:** December 2014.

**6603 The future of rural settlement**

This project is:

- a. Using the matching of modern and historic data to present an understanding of the extent to which present rural settlement (its pattern and density) results from development in the recent and more distant past,
- b. Contributing to the revision of the Rural/Urban Definitions, which are used to guide decisions about the delivery of housing and services in rural areas,
- c. Informing revision of the Supporting Documents that underpin the updating of the Profiles for the National Character Areas by Natural England, including bulleted summaries for them.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This project has now commenced, and will be able to deliver more in-depth analysis through the use of data supplied by CLG and Defra.

**Date of completion:** October 2013 (possibly earlier).

**6653 Environmental factors and regional variation in historic settlement**

A small internal project which is investigating the strength of the relationships between environmental factors and regional variation in settlement organisation and how and where those relationships fluctuated across England.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This project has now commenced.

**Date of completion:** August 2013.

**6753 A future for rural settlement and buildings in the High Weald – guidance**

Joint funding with the High Weald AONB is enabling development of a model for informing sustainable rural development for use by parish communities through development and refinement of a methodology for surveying, recording, and analysing historical settlement and buildings.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This project has commenced, the Rolvenden pilot has been completed and the guidance to inform development of the next two pilots is being drafted.

**Date of completion:** August 2013.

**6775 Towers and bastles of the border counties**

This project:

- Sets out to address shortcomings in the existing identification and understanding of the defensible towers and farmhouses of northern England and the Scottish borders, with a view to improving protection, management and conservation of these important, regionally distinctive assets.
- Provide a synthesis of the diverse body of existing, mostly site-specific, data and place it in a landscape (including Scottish) context for the first time.
- Encourage greater consideration of the curtilage, wider setting, landscape context and evolutionary history of sites when assessing (for national and local protection, including designation and planning casework) the significance of towers, bastles, bastle-derivatives and the sites/ landscapes associated with them.
- Provide community groups and individuals with a starting point to investigate them and their landscapes.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Commencement of this project has again been delayed for the same reasons as Lake District Villas. A database is being assembled and a seminar planned to involve key researchers on this subject either side of the Scottish border, and to inform the shape of guidance to aid planning and conservation casework.

**Date of completion:** March 2015.

## ACTIVITY 4F2: FIELD SYSTEMS

### Context

Field systems – extant/still in use; relict (i.e. earthworks or other visible features which survive above ground, but which are no longer in use); or entirely below-ground – are the most extensive form of heritage asset in the country. They contribute significantly to local and regional distinctiveness. Studies have demonstrated the rate of loss of historic field systems still present in the landscape, their antiquity and value in character terms, and their ability to preserve earlier and nationally

significant landscapes and assets. Action will focus on engaging communities in helping to preserve the distinctive character of our agrarian heritage.

**Activity Lead:** Dave McOmish, Historic Environment Intelligence Officer (Development) ([david.mcomish@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:david.mcomish@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £228k

### Protection Result 4F2.1: Better protection of local distinctiveness of fieldscapes

#### **3408 Fieldscape case study: Neolithic and EBA landscape of Heselton**

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** No progress on this project since last report.

**Date of completion:** March 2015.

#### **5643 Lowland Cornwall: The Hidden Landscape**

Commissioned project looking at interface between NMP, HLC data for ancient field systems.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Variation request submitted and accepted. New completion date assigned (30th Sep 2013) and task list agreed.

**Date of completion:** September 2013.

#### **6164 Fieldscapes of England: an assessment of heritage assets and a toolkit for management**

The project will develop an assessment of the extent, condition, context and significance of historic fieldscapes using existing data sets across England, and from this produce a generic guidance document to inform local communities and heritage managers; targets for more intensive assessment will be developed.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Progress is on schedule. DBA stage has been completed; PD for MAIN stage completed. Recording database finalised and Project Team has commenced work.

#### **6384 Hoo Peninsula's marshland development assessment**

Assessment of the value and significance of Hoo's marshland field systems using primary documentary and palaeo-environmental evidence to underpin management decisions and develop guidance for identification of significance for such assets.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Progress was initially good, but has been interrupted by the contractor falling ill. The contractor is hopeful of re-starting soon.

**Date of completion:** March 2015.

## ACTIVITY 4GI: PLEISTOCENE AND EARLY HOLOCENE ARCHAEOLOGY

### Context

Aligned with our survey work on establishing predictive approaches to very ancient subterranean or deeply buried sites of human activity (3A3), we will focus further work on developing the framework for assessing the significance of those we do encounter. Such ancient sites often defy accurate quantification in terms of taphonomy, boundaries and chronology

and thus present challenges in developing protection and management. Action will focus on developing approaches and guidance based on exemplars.

**Activity Lead:** Jonathan Last, Landscape Strategy Manager ([jonathan.last@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:jonathan.last@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £272k

### Protection Result 4GI.1: Efficiency in assessing chronology of Pleistocene sites

#### 6390 Palaeolithic Dating Guidance

Produce guidance document detailing appropriate use of dating techniques for assessing chronology and thus significance of Pleistocene sites, with case studies.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project has been planned and scoped but for resourcing reasons will not begin this year.

**Date of completion:** Unknown.

### Protection Result 4GI.3: Development of appropriate approaches to assessing significance of Mesolithic archaeology of the wetland/dryland edge

#### 5572 Mesolithic Coastal Change

This PhD research identifies and assesses the social and physical consequences of, and responses to, sea-level rise and loss of land in the area that is now the southern North Sea and English Channel during the Mesolithic period.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** A complete draft of the thesis has been prepared and awaits final supervisor comments. The thesis will be submitted in May 2013.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

#### 6394 Review of the Mesolithic of the wetland/dryland edge

Synthesis of published and unpublished work in an area of high potential under development pressure (e.g. Kennet Valley, Vale of Pickering), with targeted fieldwork (coring, geophysics) to map areas with sedimentary potential for stratified Mesolithic sites on the wetland/dryland edge (where settlement material may be directly associated with palaeoenvironmental evidence), assess significance of known sites, and compare with other areas.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Two projects have been commissioned (6624 and 6633) – see below.

**Date of completion:** See below.



**6633 Predictive mapping of Upper Palaeolithic/Mesolithic – Middle Kennet Valley**

The project will provide a means to assess the significance and distribution of Late Upper Palaeolithic and Mesolithic sedimentary deposits and palaeoenvironmental preservation (waterlogged remains, pollen and archaeozoological material). It will be achieved through a multi-faceted approach to predicting early prehistoric land-surfaces and remains, using the Middle Kennet Valley, Berkshire, as a case study.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project has just commenced.

**Date of completion:** July 2014.

**6644 PhD Environmental change and human activities at the dryland-wetland interface**

This PhD research project will improve understanding of the relationship between Mesolithic sites in Surrey and their landscape setting, and enhance knowledge of the environmental impact and context of Mesolithic human activities. The results will be used to evaluate the significance of Mesolithic archaeology and environmental data, and for assessing the potential threat to these resources from environmental change. In common with many parts of SE England, there is currently a paucity of high-resolution Mesolithic palaeoenvironmental records from Surrey despite the presence of lowland wetlands (e.g. former pingos and valley mires) suitable for investigation.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project is underway.

**Date of completion:** September 2015.

**6624 The Mesolithic of the wetland/dryland edge in the Somerset Levels**

The project will use a combination of borehole surveys, excavations and test pits to examine evidence for Mesolithic activity at the wetland-dryland interface in the Somerset Levels. Palaeoenvironmental studies will provide evidence of the changing character of the wetlands during the Mesolithic, and excavations will examine the wetland edge beside known Mesolithic sites. The results will be used to determine the significance and potential of the wetland fringe and identify potential threats to the Mesolithic resource.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project has just commenced.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

## Protection Result 4GI.4: Development of exemplars for HER enhancement in relation to the Palaeolithic and Mesolithic

**6618 Enhancing the Palaeolithic and Mesolithic records of the South Yorkshire SMR**

The project aims to undertake a programme of enhancement of the information held by the South Yorkshire Sites and Monuments Record (SMR) relating to the known and potential Palaeolithic and Mesolithic archaeological resource within the county in order to inform a predictive approach to future planning, land management and conservation decisions within the county.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project has just commenced.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

**6623 Enhancement of early prehistoric information within the Norfolk HER**

This project includes the enhancement of over 2250 HER records relating to early prehistoric sites and finds in Norfolk, as well as the integration into the Norfolk HER of new information from museum collections and project archives. A programme of outreach will raise public awareness of Norfolk's internationally significant early prehistoric past, and further facilitate artefact reporting in areas of high archaeological potential. Planning guidance will be developed in order to ensure that early prehistoric remains are adequately protected from the significant threats posed by development, mineral extraction and coastal erosion.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project is underway.

**Date of completion:** September 2014.

**6632 Putting the Palaeolithic into Worcestershire HER: creating an evidence base and toolkit**

Discoveries of Palaeolithic artefactual and palaeoenvironmental remains within Worcestershire have shown that the area has the potential to assist in national and international research aims for the period. However, research on the Palaeolithic is difficult for non-specialists to assess, with the result that Palaeolithic archaeology is poorly represented and poorly protected through the planning process. This project aims to place specialist information within the Historic Environment Record in a way in which it can be interpreted and used by non-specialists.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project is underway.

**Date of completion:** April 2014.

**6639 Managing the Essex Pleistocene**

The project aims to develop a methodology and create a predictive model by which the potential for the survival of Palaeolithic archaeology within any given area of Essex can be quickly assessed and its nature and significance understood in order to influence strategic plan-making and respond to development. The Project will incorporate the results of relevant ALSF projects and new potential Local Geological Sites (LGS). The project aims to demonstrate how GIS can synthesise existing information and inform understanding of the archaeological resource. The outcome will be a map-based dataset that can be used to inform local authorities of the potential impact of development on the diminishing Palaeolithic resource in Essex.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project has just commenced.

**Date of completion:** August 2014.

## ACTIVITY 4G2: PLOUGHZONE ARCHAEOLOGY

### Context

Lithic scatters, early medieval 'productive sites' and chance finds of nationally important artefacts (e.g. Staffordshire Hoard) all demonstrate the significance that can be found within the surface horizon and plough soils. For aspects of prehistory they can represent the great majority of known sites. For some sites they represent the total surviving evidence. Action will focus on developing detailed understanding of

site characteristics and distributions and measures for assigning significance (i.e. equivalent to principles of selection for assets that can be designated).

**Activity Lead:** Magnus Alexander, Senior Investigator, Assessment Team East ([magnus.alexander@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:magnus.alexander@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £74k

### Protection Result 4G2.1: Improved protection for archaeological interest contained within and immediately beneath the ploughzone

#### 6398 Preliminary national review of ploughzone archaeology

This project is intended to provide a preliminary national review of ploughzone archaeology in order to provide underpinning research for later projects within this NHPP plan period. It consists of an internal review of knowledge followed by small external projects to fill identified gaps in knowledge or examine particular issues in more detail, together with enhancement and synthesis.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** This is a preliminary internal review of ploughzone archaeology that is at the half-way stage. An interim report has been drafted which has identified a broad range of methodological approaches to the ploughzone and numerous classes of 'site'. It has also identified that there appears to have been little development in this area of archaeology over the last 25 years, that ploughzone archaeology is poorly dealt with in the NRHE and we know little about how it is dealt with in planning authorities, and that Anglo-Saxon 'productive' sites are a class that needs to be better understood. Further work is planned including externally commissioned research.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

#### 6432 Update 'Our Portable Past'

This project will research and assess recent literature and projects in order to develop a revised text for dissemination.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Final revisions underway. Preparation of material for publication somewhat behind schedule.

**Date of completion:** April 2013.

#### 6471 Rendlesham, Suffolk: ploughzone archaeology

A very high status Anglo-Saxon 'productive site' and probable royal residence complex. It was thought to be vulnerable to 'nighthawking' and this project was proposed as a way of mitigating this by having an exemplary metal detecting programme that would seek to retrieve vulnerable material and improve the understanding of the site.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Results to date have been extremely impressive, with much material recovered and several distinct zones identified.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

## ACTIVITY 4HI: SUBMERGED HERITAGE ASSETS AND LANDSCAPES

### Context

Survey and identification of submerged heritage and inundated prehistoric landscapes (Measure 3) will provide key targets for follow-up assessment. These will comprise specific assets (wrecks, crash sites etc) and wider landscapes (landforms of high potential). Further action should relate only to areas or assets subject to imminent change

(aggregates dredging, energy developments, fishing, loss through tidal action/erosion).

**Activity Lead:** Paul Jeffery, Programmes & Maritime Designation Team Leader ([paulphilip.jeffery@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:paulphilip.jeffery@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £419k

### Protection Result 4HI.1: Increased protection of significant submerged landscapes

#### **5253 Assessment of submerged landforms: Lyonesse/Scilly Isles**

This project, managed by Cornwall Council and using local expertise, will deliver submerged prehistoric coastal and marine historic environment mapping for the inshore areas of the Scilly Isles, providing GIS-based information on the location of submerged prehistoric features (field boundaries, peat deposits) for management purposes, and clarifying the rate and effects of climatic change on the islands in the past. <http://www.cismas.org.uk/lyonesse.php>

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Draft report received for comment and circulated in November 2012; discussion with Cornwall Council about report finalisation also focused on the desirability for the report to serve as a draft monograph. As this extends beyond the scope of the original PD, a Variation has been agreed to this project's end-date and funding.

**Date of completion:** June 2013.

#### **5684 Seabed prehistory: North Sea, Area 240**

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Working towards a monograph, text & illustration preparation has commenced. The next project monitoring meeting is due November 2012.

#### **5883 Assessment of inundated historical landscapes: Dunwich**

This is an integrated historical and geophysical survey by the University of Southampton of a medieval town lost through both cliff recession and coastal inundation. It aims to determine the location and extent of remains within the former city that lie buried beneath the Dunwich bank and inshore bars, and to use this as an exemplar for considering issues of protection and management of such sites. It is funded by EH and the Esme Fairburn Trust. <http://www.dunwich.org.uk/>

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Project completed. Report available through the EH website at: <http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/publications/dunwich-mapping-assessing-inundated-medieval-town/>

**Date of completion:** April 2013.

#### **6587 Sinah Circle, Langstone Harbour – assessing significance**

The Sinah Circle is a 10th-11th century structure believed to be related to shell fishing that lies underwater in Langstone Harbour, Hampshire.

Survey and excavation as part of that project determined that the circle was on a slightly raised area and consisted of a timber circle of 27 or 28 posts which once had wattle work woven between the timbers. Attempts at dendrochronological dating were unsuccessful, so a stake was radiocarbon dated and returned a date of cal AD 960-1180.

Questions were raised over the integrity of the site in 2004 following diving by Southampton University Archaeology Department which revealed that none of the marker buoys were in place. The Southampton dive team undertook

searches in the area of the circle, they found no trace of posts, but did see a number of oyster trawl marks in the area. This project will undertake an assessment of the site, provide baseline data on its character, review threats, engage stakeholders and consider how the site is currently managed within the harbour and associated management plan.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** A project summary has been received in March 2013 and discussions to move the project forward are currently underway.

#### **6651 Tresco Channel – specific archaeological investigation**

The presence of medieval pottery in Tresco Channel has been known for some time. In 2011 a local diver recovered a quantity of medieval pottery from around yacht moorings in the channel and brought it to the attention of CISMAS. This pottery was of French origin and dated to 1350-1450 AD. Later that year CISMAS undertook a survey of the seabed in this area and recovered over 250 sherds of pottery.

It seems likely that this pottery is being removed from the seabed sediments by the action of the mooring chains scouring the surface of the seabed. The narrow date range, restricted origin and confined geographical location of this pottery suggest a single event leading to its deposition. The most likely event would seem to be a medieval shipwreck. This project will undertake small exploratory excavations in the areas scoured by the two mooring chains. The aim is to establish the source of the pottery and to determine if there is any surviving associated wreck structure.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project was commissioned at the start of March and is in the preliminary stages of arranging fieldwork.

**Date of completion:** January 2014.

#### **6691 St Anthony, Rill Cove and Schiedam**

The licensees and discoverers of these sites are no longer actively carrying out work on these sites. This project will produce a desk-based assessment to ascertain the current state and whereabouts of the surviving records and objects recovered from these projects.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This project has only recently been commissioned and work has started well.

**Date of completion:** June 2013.

## Protection Result 4HI.2: Increased protection of significant submerged heritage assets

### **Mitigating impacts on Protected Wrecks**

A number of projects are underway or approaching completion on assessing the environmental condition of wrecks already protected under the Protection of Wrecks Act, and, in some cases, supporting intervention where loss of significance is unavoidable. These include HMS *Colossus*, *Royal Anne Galley*, Swash Channel Wreck, Studland Bay Protected Wreck site, and the 'Mystery Wreck' in the Eastern Solent.

#### **3576 Studland Bay**

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Bournemouth University received the comments on the final report back from EH and distributed these to those involved. The revised pieces of work have been received and we have started editing these back into the document. However with revising the Swash PD and fieldwork Swash has taken up all of BU's available resources and this work is currently on hold until the Swash Fieldwork / PD issues are finished.

### 3579 Langdon Bay, Moor Sands & The Erme Estuary Prehistoric Wreck Sites

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Following receiving comments back from the EH reviewer the final report for publication has been altered and re-edited and was submitted to the CBA at the end of August 2012 and to EH at the same time. Now with CBA who will publish in 2013.

**Date of completion:** May 2013 publication.

### 3688 Royal Anne Galley. Marine Environmental Assessment (MEA) Phase 4

The *Royal Anne* Galley was a galley frigate wrecked off the Lizard Point in November 1721. The MEA, led by the Historic Environment Service, Cornwall Council, forms one of the stages of a series of initiatives that will lead to the development of a management plan for the asset. Proposed work is for further observation and study of the disposition of the dispersal objects, renewal of the control point network on the site so that future work can be tied in to the existing plan and artefact positions and detailed recording of the two iron guns on the site as recommended in the Phase 3 report.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Weather conditions have remained consistently unsuitable to carry out the project's initial fieldwork on this wreck's exposed site. Cornwall Council confirms that the dive team remain on standby in case a weather window appears and can mobilise at short notice if necessary. As the delay to the project by November 2012 implied no possibility of completing within the 2012-13 f/y, it was agreed to move the project end-date to late Autumn 2013 to allow for fieldwork in the 2013 diving season.

### 5230 Stirling Castle Archive Assessment

The warship *Stirling Castle* sank off Deal in the Great Storm of 1703. The site was largely subject to uncontrolled recovery during the 1970s. Since then, the material archive has been largely dispersed. The Hampshire and Wight Trust for Maritime Archaeology were commissioned to audit and assess the archive to enable a more comprehensive understanding of the site and work undertaken since its discovery.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** This project is waiting on a decision from EH regarding the database.

### 5233 Hazardous monitoring and investigation

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** This project is waiting on a decision from HWTMA regarding site activity.

### 5682 Colossus Dive Trail

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** The dive trail is complete and operational. It has allowed access by visiting divers and encouraged responsible access.

### 5823 Preservation *in situ* of Protected Wrecks, Swash Channel Wreck

Recording and *in situ* preservation.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Following much input from English Heritage, Bournemouth University delivered an Updated Project Design in February which was agreed and has recently been commissioned. Work will commence in the next few weeks.

**Date of completion:** April 2014.

### 6114 HMS Colossus: Monitoring & Investigation

The *Colossus* was a 74-gun warship that was wrecked off the Isles of Scilly in 1798. A small excavation is proposed in the stern area of the wreck site to investigate the main gun deck ordnance and initiation of a long-term reburial trial on the site using real archaeological objects rather than modern tokens. Additional work is proposed to maintain the extant dive trail on site to enhance visiting divers' knowledge.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** The Project has been completed and a final report has been delivered and approved by English Heritage.

**Date of completion:** February 2013.

### 6400 Mitigating impacts on the London

The *London* was a Second Rate 'Large Ship' that blew-up on passage from Chatham in March 1665. Poor environmental conditions on site, coupled with irregular patterns of accretion and erosion of bed level, are not conducive to easy recording on site. Consequently, the asset is not wholly understood. The proposed project, by Wessex Archaeology, will help in understanding the hydrodynamics of the mobile seabed and its relationship with the archaeological remains.

**Status:** Project complete.

### 6570 HMS/m AI submarine designated diver trail

The aim of the project is to develop a visitor diver trail on the designated wreck of the HMS/m AI submarine. An underwater information guide for divers visiting the site will be designed that will aid navigation and assist visitors in recognising features on the wreck. This guide will also explain the background to the remains and the issues of protecting and managing the wreck. An online interactive visualisation will be created and supporting webpages will be hosted by the NAS and SSAC where descriptions and photographs from visiting divers can be posted.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The project was commissioned in February 2013 and planning is underway to design the dive trail and associated guides and prepare for the online visualisation.

**Date of completion:** December 2013.

### 6576 Mitigating impacts on Protected Wrecks: reburial and analysis of non-HMS Colossus wreck material

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Material from the marine environment and modern tokens were successfully sampled and reburied alongside HMS Colossus material for a long term reburial study. Analysis of the sample material and interpretation of the results is outstanding. Production of the final report is delayed due to long term illness of one of the team members.





## MEASURE 5. PROTECTION OF SIGNIFICANCE

This Measure focuses English Heritage support and action on the development of formal protection systems. These range from Designation, whether at a national or a local level, development of formal management plans, and development and expansion of Historic Environment Records for undesignated heritage both on land and in the marine zone. The Activities set out here are, clearly, closely aligned with those related to Managing Change (Measures 6 and 7) and Grant Aid for Protection (Measure 8), but are distinguished by their focus on infrastructure (protection systems) rather than case-specific responses.

Protection of significance comprises the following eight Activities:

- 5A1 STRATEGIC DESIGNATION PROGRAMME
- 5A2 UPGRADE AND MODERNISATION OF DESIGNATION BASE
- 5A3 RESTRUCTURED RESPONSIVE DESIGNATION PROGRAMME
- 5A4 SUPPORTING LOCAL COMMUNITIES IN PROTECTING SIGNIFICANT HERITAGE ASSETS
- 5B1 HERITAGE PARTNERSHIP AGREEMENTS AND MODEL MANAGEMENT PLANS
- 5B2 UNDERPINNING LOCAL PLANNING PROCESSES
- 5B3 DEVELOPING MARINE HERITAGE MANAGEMENT STRUCTURES
- 5C1 ENHANCING THE CAPABILITIES OF HISTORIC ENVIRONMENT RECORDS

The four year allocation of resource (both staff and funding) for this measure for 2011-2015 is **£11.803M**

## ACTIVITY 5AI: STRATEGIC DESIGNATION PROGRAMME

### Context

Planned designation activity will help to ensure that the full weight of statutory protection is given where threat is most urgent, or where future threat may be most appropriately forestalled. This Activity is the actual designation/registration of nationally significant assets, not the assessment of that significance. It will therefore involve the combination of priorities for designation where significance has already been scored, with priorities

feeding through from understanding significance established by Activities under Measures 3 and 4 above.

**Activity Leads:** Emily Gee, Head of Designation ([Emily.gee@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:Emily.gee@english-heritage.org.uk)); Joe Flatman, Head of Central Casework and Programmes ([joseph.flatman@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:joseph.flatman@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £2.912M

Protection Result 5AI.1: Appropriate national designation of priority heritage assets

Protection Result 5AI.2: Appropriate national designations in key locales undergoing imminent change

During 2012-13 we established a framework for handling the designation outcomes resulting from NHPP activities. This has allowed us to develop our forward work programme to address designation priorities and allocate our available resources effectively. Following the change in our approach to responsive designation (5A3) in November 2012 our casework has been running at 36% strategic cases and 64% responsive cases, which anticipates our aspiration to move towards a 75%/25% split for strategic/responsive casework by the end of the NHPP period.

Strategic assessments following from NHPP Activities include later 20th century heritage (4A2) focusing on post-war private houses; transport and communications (4B3) with the signal box project nearing completion, and a high-profile project to assess structures along the Great Western Railway in advance of a Network Rail electrification project and a project looking at structures associated with the motor car completed earlier in the year; 20th century military heritage (4E2) with a number of Cold War cases in each territory designated as well as work on Defence Estates disposals; and places of worship (4D1), such as follow-through from the Taking Stock projects on buildings of Roman Catholic Dioceses.

Our ongoing programme of Defined Area Surveys included Halifax town centre; schedulings in Ennerdale, Cumbria; reviews of the Upton Cressett estate in Shropshire and the Belmont Abbey estate in Herefordshire; Corsham MOD site in Wiltshire; the Derbyshire lead mines project; London sports buildings; and the Sussex town of Midhurst.

## ACTIVITY 5A2: UPGRADE AND MODERNISATION OF DESIGNATION BASE

### Context

The legacy of statutory designation systems which have been conducted for over fifty years is a large number of designations where the supporting information does not comply with modern standards of clarity and transparency. Over time, errors have been introduced into some data. Furthermore, if Government proposals in the Penfold Review Implementation plan (A1) are enacted, they will enable the specification of what aspects of a Listed Building confer its significance, to

reduce regulatory burden. English Heritage needs to ensure that the designation base is fit for regulatory requirements.

**Activity Leads:** Emily Gee, Head of Designation ([Emily.gee@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:Emily.gee@english-heritage.org.uk)); Joe Flatman, Head of Central Casework and Programmes ([joseph.flatman@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:joseph.flatman@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £1.242M

Protection Result 5A2.1: Greater accuracy of statutory information on the National Heritage List for England

Protection Result 5A2.2: Resolution of sites with dual designations

Protection Result 5A2.3: Modernisation of old style list entries to new standards

Protection Result 5A2.4: Published and current Principles of Selection and supporting guidance for the designation system

Protection Result 5A2.5: Establishing the case for inclusion of sites of human activity without structures in formal protection regimes

The Upgrade and Modernisation of the Designation Base programme is being developed for the new financial year. It includes Heritage at Risk sites and registered public parks, among a range of List enhancement work across the asset range. The project to review 28 post-war commercial buildings (4A2) is complete. The minor amendment programme also continues very successfully, with 6098 amendments (2186 textual and 3912 spatial) to the NHLE made over the last 12 months.

16 of the new scheduling selection guides have been completed and added to the EH website during 2012/13. The remaining 2 are in the final stages of editing and will be added to the website early in the new financial year. In addition, selection guides for ships and boats, battlefields and four designed landscape selection guides have been completed and uploaded. Four new *Introductions to Heritage Assets* on ships and boats up to 1840; ships and boats 1840-1950; coastguard stations and glass working sites were also published.

## ACTIVITY 5A3: RESTRUCTURED RESPONSIVE DESIGNATION PROGRAMME

### Context

Listing, scheduling or registration in reaction to public requests forms a very significant part of Heritage Protection activity within English Heritage. It remains the best ad-hoc mechanism for identifying individual assets or areas under threat. It is anticipated that we will be able to handle around 1500 cases from 2011-12 (of which approximately 500 may end in a positive recommendation). Through the sharpening of criteria against which requests are taken forward and the

strategic approach to priority assets, we aim to reduce the caseload between 1000 and 900 cases per annum by Year 4 of the Plan.

**Activity Leads:** Emily Gee, Head of Designation ([Emily.gee@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:Emily.gee@english-heritage.org.uk)); Joe Flatman, Head of Central Casework and Programmes ([joseph.flatman@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:joseph.flatman@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £4.321M

### Protection Result 5A3.1: Effective response to public/external requests for designation across the asset range

Changes to how EH manages the amount of responsive designation casework that we undertake in line with new DCMS instructions came into effect in November 2012. Our responsive caseload is running at around 64% at present. Notable cases during this period include the assessment and listing of Sainsbury Centre at UEA, Norwich (grade II\*) and 22 Parkside, Wimbledon, London (grade II\*), a house by Richard and Su Rogers designed for Richard Rogers' parents; Plas Wilmot, Shropshire (grade II), Wilfred Owen's birthplace and The Elms, Longedale in Cheshire (grade II), LS Lowry's house and studio; The Portal to Stephenson's tunnel, Crich, Derbyshire (grade II) and Butterley Works blast furnaces, canal tunnel and underground wharf (scheduled); The Queenborough Lines, Isle of Sheppey, Kent (scheduled) and Bosiliack prehistoric settlement, Cornwall (scheduled); the model village at Bourton-on-the-Water, Gloucestershire (grade II) and Cullercoats lifeboat station, North Tyneside (grade II); the remains of a late seventeenth/early eighteenth century cannon site, GAD8, off east Kent (protected wreck) and Utley Cemetery, Keighley, Bradford (registered landscape).

Designation Type	New Addition to NHLE	Reject	Amend	Remove from NHLE
<i>Listing</i>	403	384	242	190
<i>Scheduling</i>	44	13	15	8
<i>Parks and Garden Registration</i>	7	9	5	0
<i>Historic Wrecks</i>	1	1	1	0

Table 1: Designation Decisions April 2012 - March 2013

## ACTIVITY 5A4: SUPPORTING LOCAL COMMUNITIES IN PROTECTING SIGNIFICANT HERITAGE ASSETS

### Context

Heritage assets are valued for their contribution to local distinctiveness and character, and historical and archaeological associations. Translating this local pride into better protection empowers local communities to manage and celebrate their heritage. Action will focus on developing practical and feasible means to assist local people, organisations and authorities in developing appropriate registration of such assets.

**Activity Leads:** Sarah Buckingham, Head of Heritage Protection Reform ([sarah.buckingham@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:sarah.buckingham@english-heritage.org.uk)); Rachael McMillan, Local Engagement Adviser, London ([rachael.mcmillan@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:rachael.mcmillan@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £362k

### Protection Result 5A4.1: Strategic assessment of guidance and training required for promoting local listing approaches

#### **6437 Scope required community toolkits**

Review of existing and proposed guidance to support planning in relation to community engagement in planning process.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** English Heritage is currently undertaking a review of all its guidance (in various formats, including toolkits), to identify any gaps, or where documentation requires updating. The outcome is also awaited of Government's review of the content and amount of guidance available to the sector in support of planning policy, and is due soon to prescribe acceptable levels. These reviews will help scope and refine the need for any further community toolkits.

**Date of completion:** Linked to 6403 – proposal awaited. Completion by 2015.

#### **6403 Developing Community Toolkits**

Scoping and development of community toolkits in association with the development of best practice for community engagement through Historic Environment Action Plans.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Linked to 5A4.4 below, scoping for community toolkits will be taken forward in line with the projects identified under 5A4.4 and in line with the review of guidance being undertaken by English Heritage and Government. Proposal awaited.

**Date of completion:** 2015.

#### **6607 NAS support for 2013 SHA Conference on Historical and underwater Archaeology**

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Conference held.

**Date of completion:** 2012.

## Protection Result 5A4.2: Development and integration of Local Lists into heritage protection management systems

### Local listing projects

Preparatory work under 5B5 with selected Vanguard authorities to recognise opportunities to encourage and develop local heritage designation working with the community to be followed with projects carried out with local authorities and communities to test and roll out good practice.

#### 6018 Local Lists: developing Local List records in Essex

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Project complete – report available on [HELM](#)

**Date of completion:** 2012.

#### 6021 Local Lists: developing Warwickshire Historic Environment Records for the 21st Century

LPA report on developing records for Warwickshire HER on local lists.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Report received, awaiting final amendments.

**Date of completion:** 2013.

#### 6002 Local Lists: developing Local List records in Cheshire

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Project complete – report available on [HELM](#)

**Date of completion:** 2012.

### Local Lists: training

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** HELM training for developing and managing a local list is has now been delivered. The events have been attended by local authorities and communities. Dissemination and promotion, of the Good Practice Guide for Local Heritage Listing is on going, with presentations planned at the forthcoming Heritage Champions Conference (12th November 2012). Further case studies to support the Guide have been scoped and will be published on the HELM website. Potential partners for further projects will be scoped in due course.

**Date of completion:** 2012.

### Local List Guidance development

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** The Good Practice Guide for Local Heritage Listing was published in May 2012 and is available from the English Heritage [website](#).

**Date of completion:** 2012.

## Protection Result 5A4.3: Heritage related aspects of CLG green space designation appropriately scoped and supported

### **Scoping new CLG local green space designation**

Scope impacts and application of new CLG local green space designation and formulate appropriate response; e.g. guidance and pilot projects.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** There is not yet sufficient clarification from Government, via secondary legislation, following the Localism Act to take this forward at the present time.

**Date of completion:** 2015.

## Protection Result 5A4.4: Development and promotion of Historic Environment Action Plans to protect heritage

### **6406 Completion of the East Devon AONB HEAP**

Completion of the East Devon AONB HEAP, involving identification by local communities of locally significant assets and aspects of the historic environment; review of issues and opportunities; agreement by a range of stakeholders on priority positive management actions to address issues and take opportunities; deepening understanding of and commitment to protect and manage a range of aspects of the local historic environment; and preparation and wide dissemination of guidance for other communities to do likewise elsewhere.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This is proceeding through the commissioning process and is scheduled to complete in 2014.

**Date of completion:** 2014.

### **6407 Development of HEAP best practice and guidance documents**

Development of HEAP guidance to achieve delivery of protection through management and the taking of opportunities as well as the countering of threats, by way of SMART actions signed up for by a range of active stakeholders, using that to protect, conserve and manage assets and aspects of the historic environment that are valued in a range of ways (building on the four ways set out in Conservation Principles), and developing and deepening partnership working.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Proceeding in tandem with 6406 above.

**Date of completion:** 2014.

## ACTIVITY 5BI: HERITAGE PARTNERSHIP AGREEMENTS AND MODEL MANAGEMENT PLANS

### Context

It is essential that management activities, often conducted by owners or consultants, are based on a clear understanding of significance. Development of consistent structures and principles for management plans and HPAs is essential to build understanding and encourage successful implementation. Action will aim to establish model structures and guidance on development of management agreements and HPAs, and clear routes for identification of need and delivery of information to the relevant stakeholders in timely manner and to the appropriate format. The Activity

will also deliver 16-20 new HPAs each year supported by appropriate assessments of significance of the assets involved, and help to reduce risk and better management of scheduled monuments through S17 Management Agreements with owners.

**Activity Leads:** Sarah Buckingham, Head of Heritage Protection Reform ([sarah.buckingham@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:sarah.buckingham@english-heritage.org.uk)); Lucy Oldnall, Programme Manager, Designation Department ([lucy.oldnall@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:lucy.oldnall@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £1.963M

### Protection Result 5BI.1: Development and promotion of Heritage Partnership Agreements (HPAs)

#### 6408 Heritage Partnership Agreements

EH aims to work with owners and local authorities to set up 9 - 15 pilot Heritage Partnership Agreements per year across England, testing out their use on a range of site types and management issues. Twelve pilot HPAs are now operational, with a further nine moving towards agreement. There are a further five in the early stages of negotiations.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The project is progressing, and new agreements are being focused on the new statutory HPAs to come out of the Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Bill.

**Date of completion:** April 2015.

#### 6409 Annual Evaluation and publicising of the results of the HPA programme

Annual report on the progress of the development of HPA agreements.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** HELM and the EH website are to be updated with this information for external audiences. The Knowledge Hub is also being explored as a platform for disseminating this information.

**Date of completion:** December 2013.

#### 6410 “Constructive Conservation” publication

Publication of exemplar projects to support the development of HPAs following the introduction of new legislation early in 2014.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The exemplar projects are being identified and developed. We await the passage and coming into force of the Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Bill (by early 2013) for finalising; this legislation, if passed, will introduce statutory HPAs in 2014.

**Date of completion:** April 2015.



**6411 HPA guidance**

EH intends to support the development of HPAs for a range of buildings and optimise take-up of this option by local planning authorities and owners by publishing guidance on how to negotiate and set up an HPA.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** This is prepared in draft form. We await the passage and coming into force of the Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Bill (ERR Bill) by early 2013 and work on secondary legislation to underpin HPA process in order to finalise it accurately. It will be consulted on during 2013. We also await the outcome of further work by Government, EH and the Historic Environment Forum to identify a structure for EH Guidance.

**Date of completion:** April 2014.

**6413 HPA training**

A series of training activities to support the implementation of new legislation under the forthcoming Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Bill for Listed Building Heritage Partnership Agreements. The programme will consist of a mixture of seminars and HELM style events for both internal and external audiences.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** To be run during 2013, following the passage of the ERR Bill, and confirmation of statutory status for HPAs. An initial introductory presentation has been produced for public dissemination, and training dates agreed for sessions with heritage practitioners, to be carried out once further details of HPA process have been confirmed.

**Date of completion:** April 2014.

## Protection Result 5BI.2: Development of Marine Management Agreements

**Protected Wreck Management Agreement Programme**

This will develop guidance for implementation of methodology and commission a scoping project. A project entitled 'Management Agreements for Undesignated Wrecks' is in advanced development and will be tendered in Autumn 2011. This project, undertaken by the Hampshire & Wight Trust for Maritime Archaeology seeks to explore the application of HPAs for marine assets and develop a methodology for their application. Five Solent-based sites have been identified for a pilot study.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Stage 1 complete & outline HPA presented. Consultation with key stakeholders & application of methodology on target sites is currently happening.

**Date of completion:** September 2013.

**6414 HPA for undesignated marine sites: pilot study**

The pilot study will be run to test the methodology for protected wreck management agreements identified in the above project.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Not yet started. This project will commence following completion of the above project.

**Date of completion:** December 2014.

## Protection Result 5BI.3: Delivery of S17 Management Agreements with owners

### Section 17 Management Agreements Programme

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Ongoing work by NPCD to offer grant aid to owners of land containing Scheduled Monuments, in order to enable efficient and effective management and ensure ongoing protection is maintained.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.



Long Marton Goods Shed office, Long Marton, Cumbria (5A1). Photo © English Heritage

## ACTIVITY 5B2: UNDERPINNING LOCAL PLANNING PROCESSES

### Context

The arrival of the National Planning Policy Framework (NPPF), the Localism Act, and the Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Bill (2013?) puts the historic environment at the heart of spatial planning and makes it clear that understanding significance is the key to successful conservation in both plan making and decision making. English Heritage and other bodies have an important role as statutory consultees within the planning system (see Measure 6) to ensure

that the changes proposed by the government are implemented in a way that embeds the principles of NPPF. This Activity will ensure that role is underpinned by appropriate guidance, toolkits and partnership protocols.

**Activity Lead:** Charles Wagner, Head of National Planning Advice ([charles.wagner@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:charles.wagner@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £478k

### Protection Result 5B2.1: Effective support for neighbourhood planning

#### 6415 Scoping and assessing community plan-making requirements

Rapid identification of need and potential for new guidance and/or toolkits to encourage incorporation of heritage issues in community planning. In addition, review current skills sets of EH staff re community participation and neighbourhood planning.

Project planning for these related projects revealed the need for rapid progress to have in place by April 2012 a tool for introducing new community groups to the idea of looking at where they live and how it might be improved and then introducing the EH Understanding Place and other tools such as Knowing your Place. It was concluded that a tool to do this already existed in the form of Placecheck ([www.placecheck.info/](http://www.placecheck.info/)), and we have commissioned the people who developed Placecheck in 2000 to update it to make it relevant to neighbourhood planning. Part of the commission is to do the scoping work on existing information on community and neighbourhood planning so that all the relevant guidance can be linked via the Placecheck website. Further progress on elements of these projects is being made as we get a clearer understanding of the impacts of the Localism Act, Neighbourhood Planning Regulations, and the National Planning Policy Framework, which only became clearer from April 2012.

Having looked at how community planning has settled down and reviewing our experience of working with Locality, The Prince's Foundation, RTPi Planning Aid, CPRE/NALC, it is clear we need to promote the identification of the historic environment in a local area both to ensure it is not damaged by proposed development and to look at how it might even be enhanced. For instance EH is looking at the possibility of working with Civic Voice on a possible project on encouraging local groups to consider using the historic environment in neighbourhood plans and other activities.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Placecheck website updated for April 2012 when neighbourhood planning started: this included endorsement by all bodies delivering neighbourhood planning advice for DCLG. New webpages on EH and HELM websites on Improve your Area and Neighbourhood Planning also produced and link to Placecheck. Data from Placecheck website being analysed to see who is assessing it.

**Date of completion:** April 2012.

#### 6416 Community character areas

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** As a follow on from having Placecheck as a resource a project was undertaken by Civic Voice and Placecheck to promote Placecheck, as a first stage for civic societies and community groups to understand their areas, and was completed by November 2012. This paved the way for further work in tandem with 6686 and 6418.

**Date of completion:** November 2012.

## Protection Result 5B2.2: Local designation process incorporated into community planning

### 6668 Our Place project

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Following on from previous work funded under HER21 which created Know your place, the Bristol City HER are now developing Our Place a way of taking local groups beyond Placecheck into local designation and recognition in neighbourhood plans. The other community based activities looking at the historic environment will be promoted including conservation area appraisals. This project will use a number of case studies of working with local communities.

**Date of completion:** September 2013.

## Protection Result 5B2.3: Partnership networks established with parish councils and neighbourhood forums

### 6418 'Protecting Your Place'

This programme involves mapping and developing links with parish councils, neighbourhood networks, ward councillors etc. through Heritage Champions, and with other relevant community networks and groups. It aims to encourage these networks to promote proactive and positive local heritage management and recognising its role in neighbourhood planning and protection of local heritage.

CivicVoice is drawing on the extensive networks of CivicVoice, the Heritage Alliance, and the Council for British Archaeology, and looking at the range and variety of local community heritage protection projects which are currently underway. We hope to be able to build NHPP networks better; to celebrate what local people are doing and to help target assistance in areas which might not have felt the benefits of such community effort.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** After delays while CivicVoice changed staff, its new team has got the project underway. The Protect our Place website went live [www.protectourplace.org.uk](http://www.protectourplace.org.uk) as from the end of September 2012. The project is now completed and the CivicVoice is looking at how it can be taken forward.

**Date of completion:** April 2013.

## Protection Result 5B2.4: Ensuring greater public benefit from links between neighbourhood planning and local museums and record offices

### 6419 Expanding the Neighbourhood Plan evidence base - Museums and HERS

This project aims to find ways, by working in local authorities promoting neighbourhood planning, to encourage the connection of communities producing Neighbourhood Plans with local Museums and Record Offices (as sources of information and memory on heritage, place and social history) as well as HERs to enhance local authority, parish/town council and local community knowledge and appreciation of their historic environment, including identifying how communities can assemble an evidence base of the historic environment of their area and what physical remnants survive. This can assist in the process of creating a plan to ensure that by identifying interest in the historic environment in the context of NPPF, development proposals would not damage the historic environment and opportunities to enhance it are taken.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Project brief agreed. Consultants were appointed in December 2012 and the project will run until summer 2013. There was some delay in getting the community planning contacts in local authorities.

**Date of completion:** July 2013.

## Protection Result 5B2.5: Putting other tools in place so groups working on neighbourhood plans have a way of understanding what the development they are proposing may look like

### Updating the Building in Context website

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** [Building in Context](#) website is being revised and updated by end April 2013. It will be turned, like the Placecheck website, into a site providing a working tool that can be used for all places whether historic or not. It will help lay users to understand the concept of context of the development sites they may identify in plan-making and then appreciate what different types of development might look like if proposed for these sites. The work is being carried out by the owner of the website Kent Architecture Centre working with a number of partners including DC CAFE. Much of the existing website will be replaced including the case studies and links to training models now out of date.

**Date of completion:** April 2013.

## ACTIVITY 5B3: DEVELOPING MARINE HERITAGE MANAGEMENT STRUCTURES

### Context

There is a need for greater alignment of terrestrial and marine systems to protect the historic environment and offer operational clarity on responsibilities within the UK zones of influence. Action will focus on supporting the UK Marine Policy Statement, supporting development of inshore HERS, and agreeing defined responsibilities for action outside the 12 nautical mile limit.

**Activity Lead:** Ian Oxley, Historic Environment Intelligence Analyst (Marine Impacts) ([ian.oxley@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:ian.oxley@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £19k

### Protection Result 5B3.1: Enhanced protection of marine historic assets through improving decision making and management

#### 5460 MACHU: marine spatial planning and the historic environment

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** Project completed. Report available through the EH website at: <http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/publications/marine-spatial-planning-historic-environment/>

**Date of completion:** April 2013.

#### 6420 Marine licensing historic environment communications strategy

Preparation of strategy to communicate historic environment interests in relation to marine licensing.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Awaiting identification of EH lead. Resource transferred from 2012 to 2013.

**Date of completion:** Anticipated March 2014.

#### 6762 Partnership development in assessing marine historic environment

Enable partnership guidance development for marine historic environment engagement with the Defra/Natural England Marine Protected Area programme.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Awaiting identification of EH lead before drafting PD.

**Date of completion:** Anticipated March 2014.

#### Guidance on advice for offshore areas adjacent to England

Preparation of EH plan to guide advising on historic environment issues in sea areas adjacent to England's Territorial Waters.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Not going forward in this format.

# ACTIVITY 5CI: ENHANCING THE CAPABILITIES OF HISTORIC ENVIRONMENT RECORDS (HERS)

## Context

The publication of the National Planning Policy Framework underpins the value of a smoothly functioning planning process of a current, accessible and dynamic Historic Environment Record (NPPF, 141, n 30). This Activity recognises the need to work across the sector to establish better standards of access; integration and content for historic environment data, whether in English Heritage, Local Authorities or with other organisations by working towards content

consistency and management and new approaches to interoperability, access, data exchange and coverage.

**Activity Leads:** Gill Grayson, Head of Heritage Data Management ([Gillian.grayson@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:Gillian.grayson@english-heritage.org.uk)); Dave Batchelor, Head of Historic Environment Intelligence ([Dave.Batchelor@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:Dave.Batchelor@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £506k

## Protection Result 5CI.1: Establish HERs as the primary source for all designated and undesignated historic environment information for strategic and neighbourhood planning purposes

### HER development strategy

This programme aims to review the current state of the Better Heritage Protection-consistent strategic plan for HERs in the light of completed HER21 scheme (2010-11) projects; ensure suitable dissemination, guidance and necessary training is delivered.

### 6421 Dissemination, guidance and training to facilitate expanded content

A programme designed to disseminate the results of the HER strategy, including the HER21 scheme, and consider resulting training opportunities.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** An overarching Dissemination and Training Programme Project Design was drafted in 2012 and will be ongoing until 2015. This includes separate Dissemination and Training plans. As well as a series of information bulletins provided on the HELM website and for the HER Forum, implementation of the Dissemination Plan is being taken forward under 6692 A project to disseminate HER21 cases of good practice to the conservation sector through articles published in the IHBC magazine Context.

**Date of completion:** 2015.

### 6677 Evaluate progress of implementation Phases 1 and 2 against strategy

An iterative programme of evaluation of the HER strategy implementation through individual projects.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The HER support strategy 2009-2015 is supported by regular evaluation of the original aims and objectives against the results of commissioned projects. An evaluation of the HER21 projects was carried out in 2011-12 and an interim report published on HELM. An evaluation of the sustainability and success of the projects was explored through an invitation to submit '18 month on' summaries. These are now on the HELM website at [www.helm.org.uk/HER21](http://www.helm.org.uk/HER21). Phase 2 is currently operational through further commissioned projects, which will be reported on following completion. There is scope for further evaluation and follow up of projects that included built historic environment elements, in particular the recommendations in project 6013 Information and Partnerships carried out by the Institute of Historic Building Conservation (IHBC).

**Date of completion:** 2015.

### **Expand the distribution and enhance the interoperability of HERs nationally**

This programme aims to ensure that all HERs are cross-searchable on the Heritage Gateway, to enhance existing functionality to enable HERs to download up-to-date spatial and textual data on designated assets from the EH website for upload into HER databases, and to oversee the management and administration of the FISH Interoperability Toolkit project, post implementation.

#### **6423 Develop and implement tools to support interoperability (6423, 6527)**

Manage and administer the FISH Interoperability Toolkit post implementation.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The FISH Interoperability Toolkit Project has been completed. The Archaeology Data Service has been tweaking the toolkit in response to user needs and the final training session will be delivered by the end of June 2013. A Service Level Agreement is in place and will be operational from 1 April 2013.

**Date of completion:** June 2013.

#### **6679 Increase number of HERs on the Heritage Gateway**

A programme of work to increase the number of HERs cross-searchable on the Heritage Gateway. It also includes improvements to the Heritage Gateway website.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** 43 HERs are cross-searchable on the Heritage Gateway and 2 are in progress. A further 2 have funds committed and are expected to begin work early in April 2013. 13 HERs are WMS enabled and available on the mapping and 2 are in progress. A further 4 HERs have indicated that they expect to commit during the 2013 financial year.

The status is amber because the target of 5 new HERs has not been achieved this year, although good progress has been made on WMS enabling. Many HERs continue to find that they are unable to make firm commitments at the current time. <http://www.heritagegateway.org.uk>.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing programme.

#### **6680 Improve data download functionality**

Enhance existing functionality to enable HERs to download up-to-date spatial and textual data on designated assets from the EH website for upload into HER databases more efficiently.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** After difficulties delivering the data download functionality, the Access to Designated Data project board agreed that this work should be deferred and picked up as a separate project in the first quarter of the 2013 financial year. This decision acknowledges the increased risk in continuing with loss of knowledge due to staff changes and continuing delays. It also provides the opportunity to review the possibility of adding back in a number of deliverables that were stripped out in an effort to meet deadlines. Furthermore, it allows EH to obtain further user feedback and to investigate technological advances that are likely to result in a product that delivers greater improvements than originally envisaged.

**Date of completion:** March 2015.



### Enhance the HER national audit programme

The enhancement of the audit programme will provide support to local authorities to self-assess their structure, staffing, content, compliance with standards and data quality advice on consistency of HERs. It comprises: development of benchmarks for HPR-consistent HERs; a review of the HER audit process and revision in line with strategy for HER development (5C1.101) and benchmarks; introduction of a revised, automated process; and the ongoing management and partnership funding of audits for HERs.

#### 6270 Review HER audit process and automate

Review HER audit process and revise in line with strategy for HER development and benchmarks. Implement revised, automated process.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Some minor revisions to the audit specification are underway, and user consultation is planned. As noted below (6681) the inter-relationship with HER Benchmarks has now been agreed, full scoping of the project to update HER Audits is the next step.

**Date of completion:** 2015/6.

#### 6450 HERs Local Heritage Conference

This will be a national conference/workshop seminar involving HERs, third-sector and voluntary organisations and community groups to explore the role of the HER in supporting local people to manage and celebrate their historic environment.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** During April 2012, as a follow-up to the HER21 scheme, EH in partnership with the Association of Local Government Archaeological Officers (ALGAO) and the Institute of Historic Building Conservation (IHBC) ran a number of successful workshops for historic environment professionals to look at ways in which they could engage local communities in the work that they do and to see what role social media could play in achieving that goal. The workshops shared ideas for both traditional and new ways of working, highlighted issues that challenge HER and Conservation professionals looking to engage with communities, and provided support to find solutions. The outcomes from the workshops have enabled us to gain a deeper understanding of the role of HERs and Conservation Officers in developing local engagement and will be used to inform the development of good practice and knowledge transfer. The recommendations from this project have been taken up under 6404 HERs case studies.

Information about the project can be found at: <http://www.heritagegateway.org.uk/gateway/news/detail.aspx?ctid=101&id=5139>

**Date of completion:** June 2012.

#### 6681 Develop benchmarks

Develop benchmarks for HERs to support consistency with Better Heritage Protection.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The scope of the proposed project and the inter-relationships with HER Audits (6270) has now been agreed. The next stage is to engage the sector to develop the project to deliver benchmarks that encompass the full scope of HERs and focus upon outputs and outcomes.

**Date of completion:** 2015/6

#### 6723 Deliver HER Audit Programme

Manage and part fund a programme of audits for HERs to self-assess their structure, staffing, content, compliance with standards and data quality.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The ongoing programme of audits has continued, evaluating against best-practice guidance and nationally based standards (further developed by a continuing cycle of regular audit revisits). During 2012-13, 12 full audits have been worked on and 2 revisits.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

**6404 HERs case studies**

A project to develop case studies that share learning and experience where social media has been used to inspire greater engagement with the HER.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Five case studies have been commissioned to share learning and experience where social media has been used to inspire greater engagement with the HER. The case studies will be used to build good practice guidance as a fulfilment of recommendations coming out of Project 6450 (see above).

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

**6424 Enhance modelling capability I – constraint and alert mapping**

Guidance on developing HER-derived Alerts and Constraints mapping.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Land Use Consultants were commissioned to follow up the HER21 project 6033. The original guidance was revised and a sector consultation is currently underway.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

**6527 Informing the Future of the Past: creation of a wiki system to host the IFP publication**

A project to update the Informing the Future of the Past: Guidelines for Historic Environment Records guidance to support its continuation as the most comprehensive guidance available to those who manage, work in and use HERs in the UK and beyond.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** The aim of the project was to enable the current guidelines to be more easily edited and updated and, therefore, more sustainable. The objectives to fulfil this aim were to build a suitable website to host the text, transfer the text to this website and undertake minor editing. It was decided that a wiki platform would provide the most sustainable platform as this allows several people access to edit or update the text. The format also enables sections of text to be updated without having to revise the whole of the guidance. The project was undertaken by the Archaeology Data Service (ADS) and the Association of Local Government Archaeological Officers (ALGAO). The ADS built the wiki website and transferred the content: the editing was done by ALGAO members. It is vital that useful, appropriate and accurate guidance is readily available to those who manage, work in and use HERs. Without up-to-date, relevant guidance for HERs, it is not possible to support HERs to fulfil their role as the primary source for all designated and undesignated historic environment information for the purposes of planning at strategic and neighbourhood levels. The project has enabled guidance to move towards a more sustainable and responsive model to better support HERs in their role.

**Date of completion:** January 2013.

**6692 Dissemination, guidance and training for HER content: Conservation Officer case studies**

A project to disseminate HER21 cases of good practice to the conservation sector through articles published in the IHBC magazine Context.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Dissemination Guidance and Training for HER content – Conservation Officer Case Studies. IHBC has been commissioned to gather cases of good practice arising from HER21 projects involving the built historic environment record and conservation staff. A series of six articles will appear in Context, beginning with an introductory article in July 2013.

**Date of completion:** July 2014.

**6761 Social media case studies: Distinctly Black Country**

One of five case study projects commissioned under 6404 (see above).

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This case study will pay particular attention to the selection of social media tools, the effect social media work has had on the profile of local HERs, and the impact it has had in engaging people with local heritage in the Black Country.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

**6765 Social media case studies: Archiving Social Media**

One of five case study projects commissioned under 6404 (see above).

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Mesolithic Online Resources (Archaeology Data Service)

This case study will explore and develop a specific criteria to be used in the appraisal and selection of social media output for digital archiving.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

**6768 Social media case studies: A tool for engaging communities with recording heritage**

One of five case study projects commissioned under 6404 (see above).

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This case study will look at the lessons learned during the first year of a Worcester project that is using various social media platforms to help facilitate and enhance the engagement of young people with the historic environment.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

**6769 Social media case studies: Developing a historic environment social media presence for Suffolk**

One of five case study projects commissioned under 6404 (see above).

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This case study will document the processes involved in planning and setting up a social media strategy at a local authority HER.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.

**6774 A collaborative approach to developing a social media strategy (Bristol)**

One of five case study projects commissioned under 6404 (see above).

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This case study will detail a step by step approach to developing a social media strategy that will not impact on existing HER resources, and will provide a model business case to secure support for the use of social media within a local authority setting.

**Date of completion:** May 2013.



## MEASURE 6. MANAGEMENT OF PLANNED CHANGE IN THE HISTORIC ENVIRONMENT

The front line of protection is the daily decisions made on proposals for change to heritage assets. The most significant national heritage assets are protected through a range of designations and it is sustaining and enhancing significance that is at the core of our mission to pass on a rich cultural heritage to the future. The great majority of our activity and resource is bound up in this mission. English Heritage supports management of change to the historic environment in two main ways, plan-making and the historic environment, and decision-making in proposals for change.

Managing change in the historic environment comprises the following seven Activities:

- 6A1 STRATEGIC PLANNING FRAMEWORKS
- 6A2 EARLY SUPPORT FOR MANAGEMENT OF CHANGE
- 6A3 MANAGEMENT OF SCHEDULED MONUMENTS
- 6A4 DECISION-MAKING IN THE PLANNING PROCESS
- 6A5 SUPPORTING CARE AND MANAGEMENT OF LISTED PLACES OF WORSHIP
- 6A6 SUPPORTING INFORMED MANAGEMENT OF CHANGE IN THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT
- 6B1 STRATEGIC CONDITION MONITORING

The four year allocation of resource (including staff and funding) for this measure for 2011-15 is **£19.339M**<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>This figure is as given in the original EH Action Plan. It has not been adjusted following the National Planning & Conservation Department restructure.

## ACTIVITY 6A: MANAGING CHANGE IN THE HISTORIC ENVIRONMENT

The positive management of change to protect and enhance significance is mainly delivered through the National Planning and Conservation Department via the 9 local teams around the country. Local authorities and other partners are required to consult English Heritage on preparing policies for the local management of their historic environment and for individual applications that affect nationally designated heritage assets or their settings. This includes buildings, monuments, marine sites and landscapes. Deadlines for providing advice are set out in our [Charter](#) and we aim to respond efficiently, effectively and in a business-like

manner, adding value to the decision making process. We measure our performance against these targets. Through a rigorous prioritisation process we have concentrated on providing advice on proposals which are likely to cause harm, or substantial harm, to the historic environment. We also aim to engage at the earliest opportunity through pre-application advice wherever possible.

Our performance against targets in our charter for the period from April 2012 to end of March 2013 is given in Table 2.

Casework Type	Nos	Responses within deadline	Percentages within deadline
<i>LB Consent</i>	6,710	6,413	95.6%
<i>Planning</i>	8,233	7,884	95.8%
<i>SMC</i>	1,252	1,200	95.8%
<i>Ecclesiastical Exemption</i>	801	750	93.6%
<i>Section 42</i>	205	198	96.6%
<i>Conservation Area Consent</i>	565	533	94.3%
<i>LB Consent Referrals</i>	4	4	100.0%
<i>Pre-application work</i>	900	779	86.6%
<i>Protection of Wrecks Act 1973 sl licences</i>	480	442	92.0%
<i>Land use planning cases</i>	1,141	1,125	98.6%
<i>Marine licences</i>	143	143	100.0%
<b>Total</b>	<b>20,434</b>	<b>19,471</b>	<b>96.0%</b>

Table 2. 6A1 to 6A5: Summary of national EH casework activity and response time against agreed targets (1 April 2012 to 31 March 2013)

This compares favourably to 2011/12 where there were a total of 18,081 notifications received and the percentage responded to within deadline was 94%.

## ACTIVITY 6A1: STRATEGIC PLANNING FRAMEWORKS

### Context

English Heritage promotes the development of positive, proactive strategies for the conservation and enjoyment of the historic environment. This advice is given as a statutory and non-statutory consultee on a range of different types of plan/strategy and to a number of different bodies. In the local authority context, these include local development frameworks, sustainable community strategies, mineral plans, economic strategies and cultural strategies, as well as forthcoming neighbourhood plans. More widely,

English Heritage's role in strategic planning frameworks encompasses plans developed by other bodies such as the Environment Agency, Natural England and Local Enterprise Partnerships (amongst others). It also includes specialist strategic planning frameworks such as World Heritage Site Management Plans and Marine Plans.

**Activity Lead:** Carol Pyrah, Planning Director North East ([carol.pyrah@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:carol.pyrah@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £1.928M

English Heritage is consulted by local authorities on local development frameworks, area action plans, strategies, management plans and other strategic frameworks. Our local teams are engaged on a day-to-day basis in providing advice. As the number of Local Neighbourhood Plans increase we are developing means to provide effective support for those local communities wishing to develop plans for their own areas.

### Protection Result 6A1.1: Advice on Neighbourhood Development Plans

The local offices have commented on 589 Local Development Frameworks submitted by local planning authorities in 2012/13. Neighbourhood Plans are starting to be submitted for comments and advice. Figures for these will be produced in the half yearly report in 2013/14.

The East of England Team has successfully encouraged improvements to the emerging **Fenland Core Strategy** using the National Planning Policy Framework. When the first draft was launched in summer 2011, it contained no historic environment policies and few references elsewhere in the document. At the same time, the Leader of the Council gained a national profile from reported comments which were interpreted by some in the sector to be anti-archaeology. The English Heritage advice on the second draft consultation in the summer of 2012 has resulted in the final draft containing a stand-alone historic environment policy, plus a number of improved references throughout the document.

The town of **Thame** in south Oxfordshire published a draft **Neighbourhood Development Plan** in September 2012. The Plan included a proposal for a development of 62 houses within the Conservation Area and the setting of a Grade II listed building. English Heritage and South Oxfordshire District Council's Conservation Officer were concerned about the proposal and met with the site owners and the Town Council to discuss revisions to the policy including a reduced number of dwellings. Subsequently English Heritage gave evidence at the Examination. The Examiner recommended further amendments to the policy to address English Heritage's concerns.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## Protection Result 6AI.2 Advice on strategies and plans produced by local authorities and other organisations

In the first half of 2012/13 the local teams provided advice on over 200 strategies and plans produced by local authorities and other organisations, and more than 150 in the second half of the year.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## Protection Result 6AI.3: Advice on management plans for nationally protected areas

Please see text for Protection Result 6AI.2



# ACTIVITY 6A2: EARLY SUPPORT FOR MANAGEMENT OF CHANGE

## Context

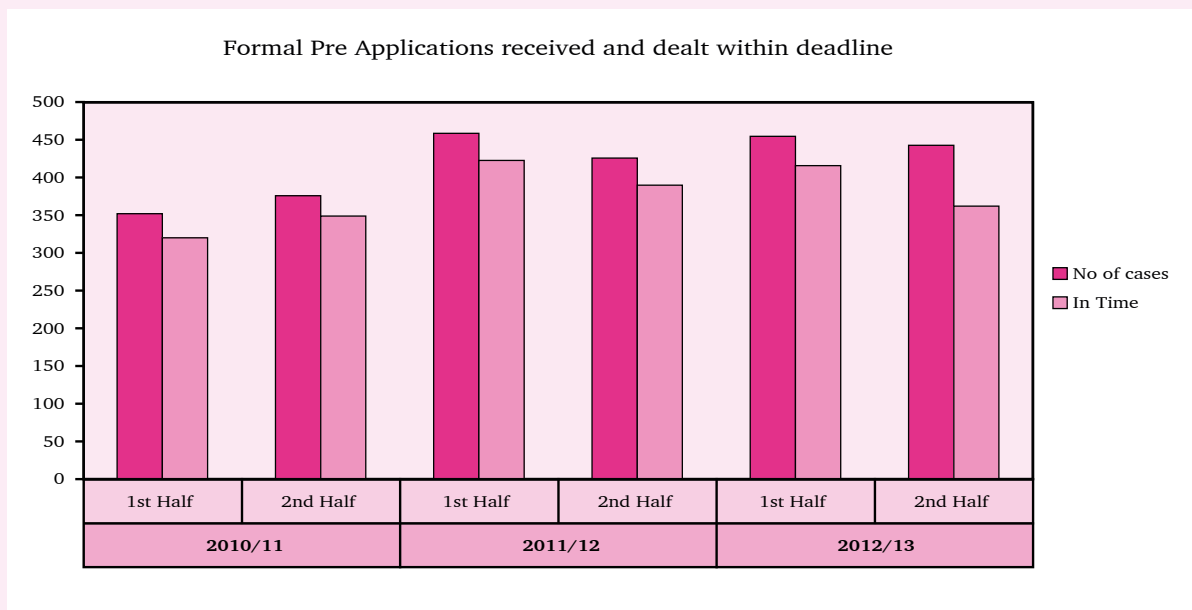
English Heritage places a high priority on providing pre-application advice on proposals affecting the historic environment. This aids in the constructive conservation of places based on sustaining significance. Action will continue to develop and deliver timely, clear and justified pre-application advice to owners, developers, local authorities and other bodies.

**Activity Lead:** Trevor Mitchell, Planning Director Yorkshire and Humber ([trevor.mitchell@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:trevor.mitchell@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £3.793M

English Heritage encourages consultation by owners, developers, local authorities and others prior to the submission of applications for change. We provide this pre-application advice in two ways, as informal initial advice, or as formal pre-application advice through the planning system. Early engagement to identify historic environment issues enables more efficient and informed decisions and can identify opportunities for enhancement that can inform the eventual design approach.

## Protection Result 6A2.1: Pre-application advice on planning, listed building, conservation area and scheduled monument applications



Leicester City Council has ambitious plans for the **Corn Exchange and Market Place in Leicester** involving removal of the 1970s indoor market attached to the rear of the Corn Exchange. The scheme includes a new covered market building, but also provides a rare opportunity to restore the significance of the Market Place as a historic site enclosed by both listed and unlisted buildings within a conservation area. English Heritage was consulted early in the development of the scheme, and advised close attention to the character of the buildings defining this important space at the heart of the city. Discussions were with the architects and the City Mayor who leads the Leicester Heritage Partnership. The subsequent formal application stage benefited from a more efficient process.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## Protection Result 6A2.2: Pre-application advice on strategic development areas and local authority asset strategies

In 2012 the London Historic Places team worked with the LB Hillingdon to tighten their tall buildings policy and to improve the quality of their Local Plan environmental evidence base. This will result in greater understanding and protection of the Borough's historic character. Following formal representations and the development of a Statement of Common Ground for the Examination in Public, the Council agreed to tighten the Local Plan tall buildings policy in light of English Heritage/CABE's Guidance on Tall Buildings (2007). A borough-wide Townscape Characterisation Study, as recommended by English Heritage was commissioned in March 2013. The report will provide a clear illustration of the Borough's historic development and define the resulting characteristics which the Council wishes to conserve. It will be used by development management officers to enforce their tall buildings policy, and to protect the local character and distinctiveness of areas most subject to change.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## Protection Result 6A2.3: Pre-application curatorial advice to local authorities and developers in Greater London on archaeological implications of proposed development

The Greater London Archaeology Advisory Service (GLAAS) maintains a unique service within English Heritage, providing archaeological advice to planning authorities in a role normally filled by local authorities elsewhere in England. In keeping with NPPF policy, a proportion of this advice is dispensed to local authorities and prospective developers in advance of a planning application.

This year, GLAAS has provided extensive pre-application archaeological advice to Thames Water as part of the ambitious Thames Tunnel scheme which crosses the city from west to east. GLAAS has played an important role in flagging up vulnerable heritage assets at an early stage and in ensuring their inclusion in preliminary survey work that is now forming part of the scheme's application to the Planning Inspectorate. GLAAS has also advised on proposed mitigation strategies where heritage impact has been unavoidable and continues to influence the details of the scheme and its research agenda as the application progresses.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## ACTIVITY 6A3: MANAGEMENT OF SCHEDULED MONUMENTS

### Context

One of English Heritage's unique roles is in advising the Secretary of State on the granting of consent for works to archaeological remains of national importance which are designated as scheduled monuments. On behalf of DCMS, English Heritage will continue to administer the scheduled monument consent process by providing timely and efficient expert advice to owners and developers and making clear recommendations to DCMS on individual consent applications. English

Heritage's statutory role for scheduled monuments also includes the delegated granting of licences for non-invasive survey and investigating damage to scheduled monuments (results of which will inform our Heritage Crime initiative – see Activity 2B2).

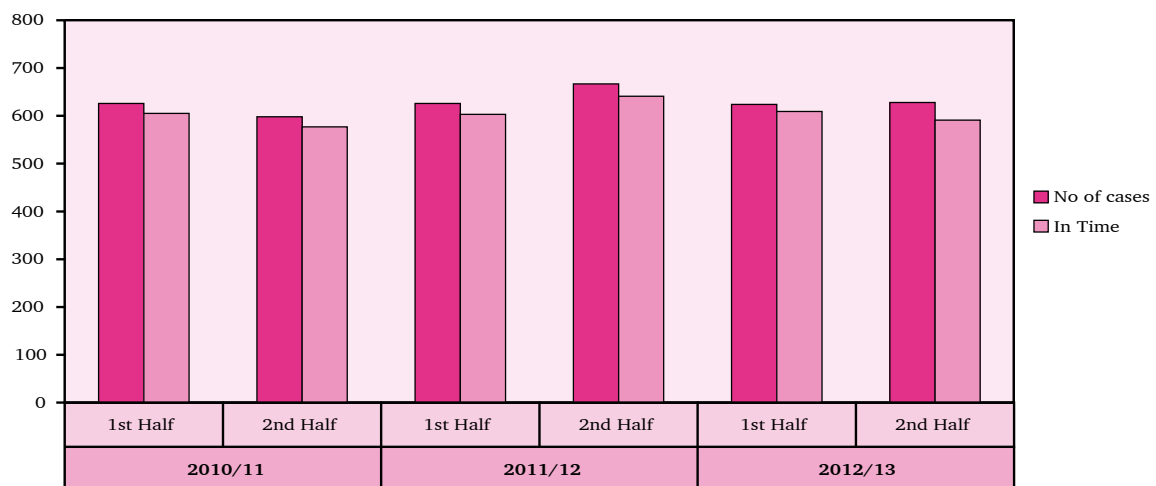
**Activity Lead:** Andy Brown, Planning Director South East ([andy.brown@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:andy.brown@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £215k

English Heritage provides advice and guidance on works planned on scheduled monuments and administers the scheduled monument consent process on behalf of DCMS.

### Protection Result 6A3.1: Sound advice to DCMS on Scheduled Monument Consents

SMCs received and dealt within deadline



The number of SMC applications dealt with by English Heritage has remained relatively constant in total numbers since 2010/11, with a peak of applications in the second half of 2011/12.

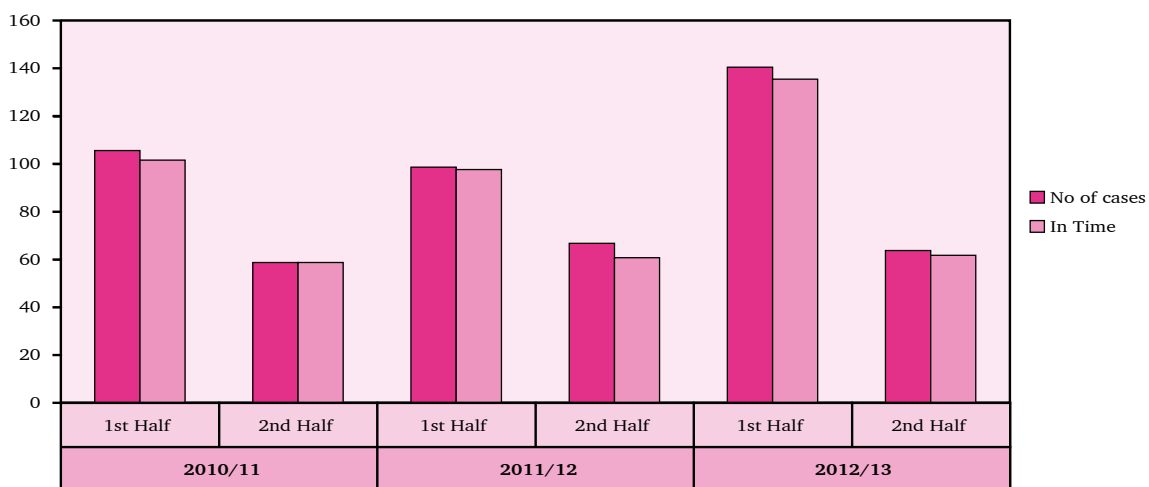
In August 2012, English Heritage dealt with an application from the Church of England for scheduled monument consent relating to the **Old Palace in the Worcester Cathedral precinct**. The Old Palace is the oldest and most archaeologically significant part of the Cathedral complex, and parts of the building are used by the Diocese for offices and conferencing facilities – generating much needed income to help maintain the building.

Permission was given to excavate a trench in the basement of the Old Palace to put in gas and heating pipes, along with detailed advice on how this could be achieved while remaining sympathetic to the fabric of the building. The advice was instrumental in allowing the Cathedral to provide good facilities for staff and visitors alike.

**Status:** ●**Progress:** See text above**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## Protection Result 6A3.2: Efficient appraisal and issue of S42 licenses for non-invasive survey work

Section 42 Licences received and dealt within deadline



The number of S42 Licences assessed and issued has increased from 165 in 2010/11 to 205 in 2012/13.

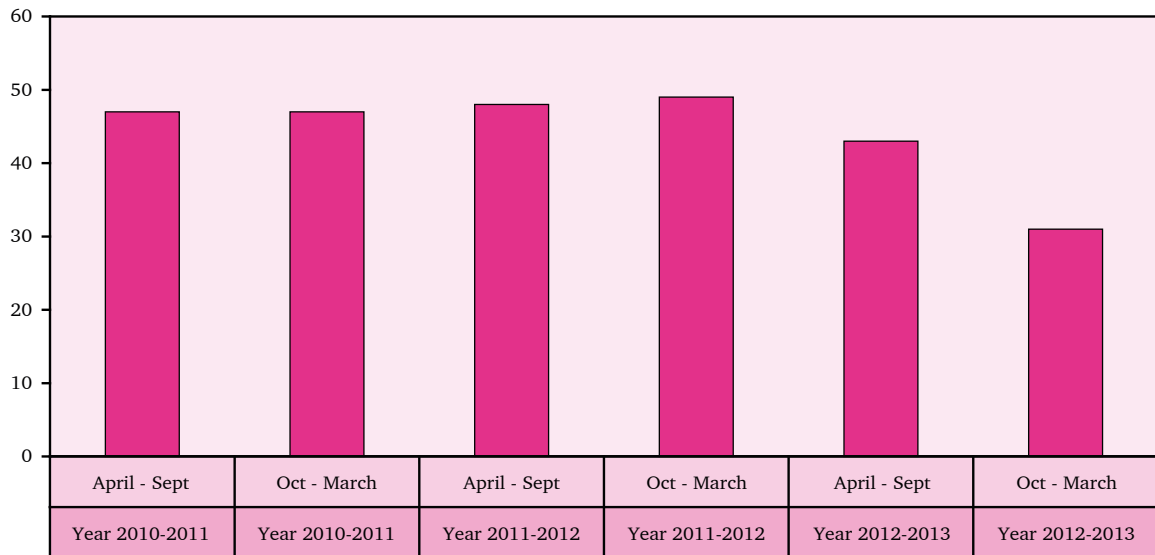
The University of Cambridge has established a long-running research project at the **Roman civitas capital at Aldborough**, North Yorkshire. The major part of this research is the geophysical survey of the entire settlement and its context over a five-year period. Interim reports are produced at the conclusion of each season and the proposals for the following year notified accordingly.

The S42 licence was given for a period of 5 years with monitoring phases built into the consent, in order to reduce bureaucracy and delay. The results have been exceptional and have revised our interpretation of the place of Roman 'small towns'.

**Status:** ●**Progress:** See text above.**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## Protection Result 6A3.3: Monitoring of damage to Scheduled Ancient Monuments

Damage to Scheduled Monuments reported to English Heritage



The impact of vandalism to the historic fabric and modern interpretation infrastructure at **Scarborough Castle** was carefully recorded and discussed with English Heritage Legal team. Careful assembly of the case work details led to a court case in early 2013 and the prosecution of the two offenders.

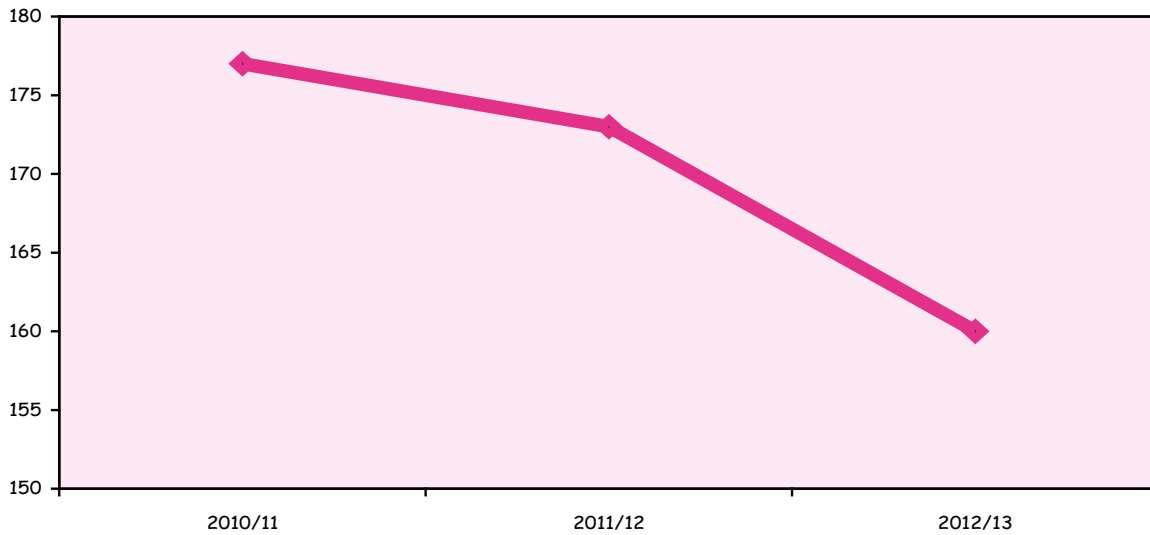
**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## Protection Result 6A3.4: Proper operation of Class 6 Consent procedure in relation to EH properties

Schedule Monument Consent Class 6 applications



The number of Class 6 Consents has decreased from 177 in 2010/11 to 160 in 2012/13.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

# ACTIVITY 6A4: DECISION-MAKING IN THE PLANNING PROCESS

## Context

Through English Heritage’s statutory role in the planning process (listed building and planning applications, and assessing environmental impact assessments) we will continue to provide timely, clear and constructive advice on managing major change to nationally important heritage assets at all stages in the formal planning process. This includes where change affects registered parks and gardens, registered battlefields, conservation areas and their settings

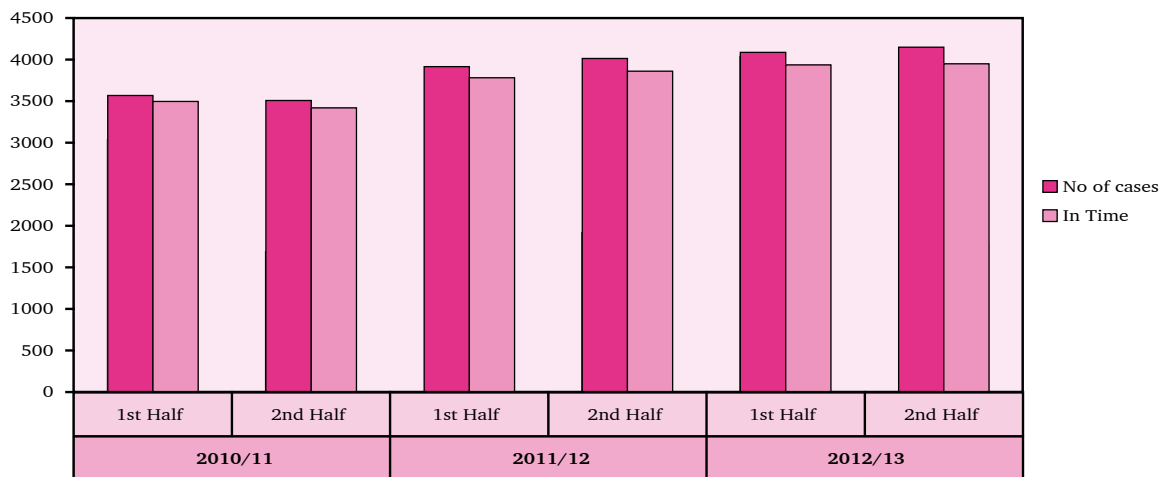
and the setting of listed buildings and scheduled monuments. We will also continue to provide advice on nationally significant but undesignated heritage assets through the planning process.

**Activity Lead:** Trevor Mitchell, Planning Director Yorkshire and Humber ([trevormitchell@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:trevormitchell@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £7.235M

## Protection Result 6A4.1: Advice to local planning authorities on proposals affecting nationally important heritage assets throughout the formal planning process

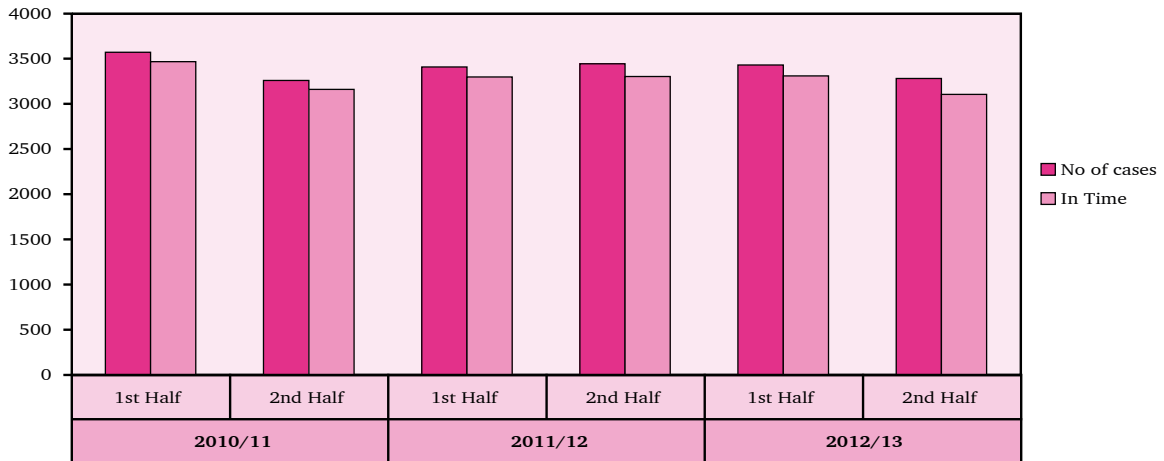
Planning applications received and dealt within deadline



The number of planning applications English Heritage is consulted on has increased year on year since the introduction of the NHPP, from 7,075 applications in 2010/11 to 8,236 in 2012/13.

At **Freeman’s Reach, Durham**, English Heritage advised on a planning application for major new mixed use development on a highly sensitive site within the city centre conservation area and affecting the setting of the Durham Cathedral and Castle World Heritage Site. This site, which contains a large former ice rink building, was the subject of a public inquiry a few years ago at which English Heritage gave evidence. Key amongst our concerns about development on the site were the classic views from Prebends Bridge and the importance of good urban design in this prominent location. After extensive pre-application involvement we were able to recommend that the final planning application be approved.

Listed Building applications received and dealt within deadline



The number of Listed Building Consent applications dealt with by English Heritage has reduced from 6,830 in 2010/11 to 6,710 in 2012/13

**Eastgate House, Rochester** is a building of outstanding heritage significance, made famous by Charles Dickens and listed at Grade I. English Heritage was involved for many years in a constructive dialogue with the project stakeholder group to formulate a scheme for securing a sustainable future for Eastgate House. An application for listed building consent was submitted in autumn 2012 to bring the house back into active use as a cultural, educational and community resource. The biggest challenge was to secure access to the multiple levels within the buildings without doing undue harm to significance and English Heritage provided advice that has led to a suitable balance being struck between the effects of change on the building and the public benefits arising from the scheme.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.





## Protection Result 6A4.2: Curatorial advice to local authorities and developers on archaeological implications of proposed development in Greater London

The number of Listed Building Consent applications dealt with by English Heritage has reduced from 6,830 in 2010/11 to 6,710 in 2012/13

**Eastgate House, Rochester** is a building of outstanding heritage significance, made famous by Charles Dickens and listed at Grade I. English Heritage was involved for many years in a constructive dialogue with the project stakeholder group to formulate a scheme for securing a sustainable future for Eastgate House. An application for listed building consent was submitted in autumn 2012 to bring the house back into active use as a cultural, educational and community resource. The biggest challenge was to secure access to the multiple levels within the buildings without doing undue harm to significance and English Heritage provided advice that has led to a suitable balance being struck between the effects of change on the building and the public benefits arising from the scheme.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

**Curatorial advice** on archaeological interest in London is uniquely hosted by English Heritage. The Greater London Archaeology Advisory Service (GLAAS), manages and develops the Historic Environment Record (HER) for the capital and the archaeological advisers provide expert advice to 31 of the 33 London Boroughs. There were approximately 2280 enquiries last year that required detailed appraisal by the four archaeology advisors for potential archaeological impact, with approximately 939 requiring mitigation through assessment or conditions attached to permissions. The number of planning applications is down from last year. This is believed to be a result of the London Olympics.

**The Science Advisor** attached to GLAAS for the same period recorded advice on 75 sites from across 15 boroughs. The borough with the greatest number of different projects was Westminster, closely followed by Greenwich and Wandsworth. Consideration of geoarchaeology made up more than half of all requests, followed by general environmental archaeology and then burial grounds/human remains. Of the 75 sites, 16 required at least one site visit.

**The Greater London HER**, one of the largest in the country, contains over 72,000 records from the earliest human occupation through to the Cold War. Over the last five years the GLHER team with the help of volunteers and placement students, has added over 12,000 new records to the database.

Each year the GLHER receives an average of 500 requests for data. Most of these requests, nearly 90%, are from commercial organisations of which c.161, in 2012-13, were priority response requests.

Large data requests have come from a number of research projects - English Landscape and Identities, The Atlas of Hillforts in Britain and Ireland, and Roman Rural Settlements - as well as infrastructure projects such as the Thames Tunnel and HS2. In addition the GLHER has negotiated a data licensing agreement for GLHER data with Thames Water.

Although London's South Bank is indelibly associated with performances of Shakespeare's plays, hosting the sites of the Rose and the rebuilt Globe theatres, it was in fact in Shoreditch, on the northern edge of the Elizabethan city that Shakespeare's first works were performed. Recent archaeological investigations secured as part of planning applications in this part of what is now Hackney, instigated and overseen by EH's GLAAS team, have revealed walls, floors and parts of the polygonal base plan of the first two purpose-built theatres in Britain since Roman times; The Theatre (1576) and The Curtain (1577). The latter staged plays until closure, perhaps in 1622, whilst the former was partially dismantled in 1598, carried across the Thames and reconstructed as the original Globe Theatre.

Fieldwork in 2008 and 2012 revealed remains of both theatres. Negotiations between the developers, London Borough of Hackney's planning department and English Heritage's Greater London Archaeological Advisory Service and Inspector of Ancient Monuments has resulted in amended development schemes that will display the remains of both theatres in basement exhibition spaces. The Curtain especially is set to become the centrepiece of a much larger regeneration scheme and a significant new heritage attraction for London.



The Curtain



4-6 New Inn Broadway, London EC2A

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## ACTIVITY 6A5: SUPPORTING CARE AND MANAGEMENT OF LISTED PLACES OF WORSHIP

### Context

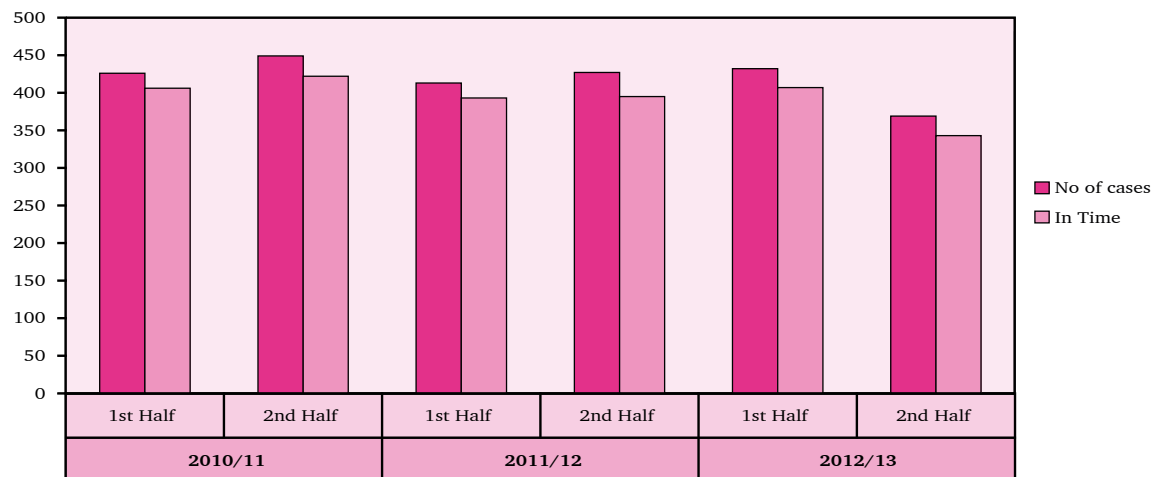
For those denominations exempt from listed building consent, English Heritage will provide timely, clear and constructive advice and guidance to local faith communities and congregations, the relevant advisory committees and their decision-making bodies.

**Activity Lead:** Trevor Mitchell, Planning Director Yorkshire and Humber ([trevor.mitchell@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:trevor.mitchell@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £157k

### Protection Result 6A5.1: Advice on managing change to exempt denominations

Ecclesiastical Exemption cases received and dealt within deadline



The number of Ecclesiastical Exemption Notifications received by English Heritage has reduced from 875 in 2010/11 to 805 in 2012/13.

**Sts. Gervase and Protase (a unique dedication in the UK) in Little Plumstead, Norfolk** is a grade II\* small 12th-century parish church with a characteristic East Anglian round tower. A hospital chapel since 1928, the redevelopment of the now-closed hospital for housing brings the potential for increased use. EH has encouraged the parish to provide improved access and visitor facilities. Traditional designs for an extension proved inadequate, so EH encouraged a contemporary approach which respects the form and scale of the church but uses modern materials and details to striking effect. Planning permission was granted in late 2012.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## ACTIVITY 6A6: SUPPORTING INFORMED MANAGEMENT OF CHANGE IN THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT

### Context

English Heritage is a statutory consultee for the new marine licensing system which started on 6 April 2011 (replacing the Food & Environmental Protection Act and the Coastal Protection Act). English Heritage will provide informed, timely and constructive advice on managing the marine historic environment in this process and advising on Marine Conservation Zones,

and will operate the protected wrecks licensing system in relation to the Protection of Wrecks Act 1973.

**Activity Lead:** Chris Pater, Marine Planner ([chris.pater@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:chris.pater@english-heritage.org.uk))

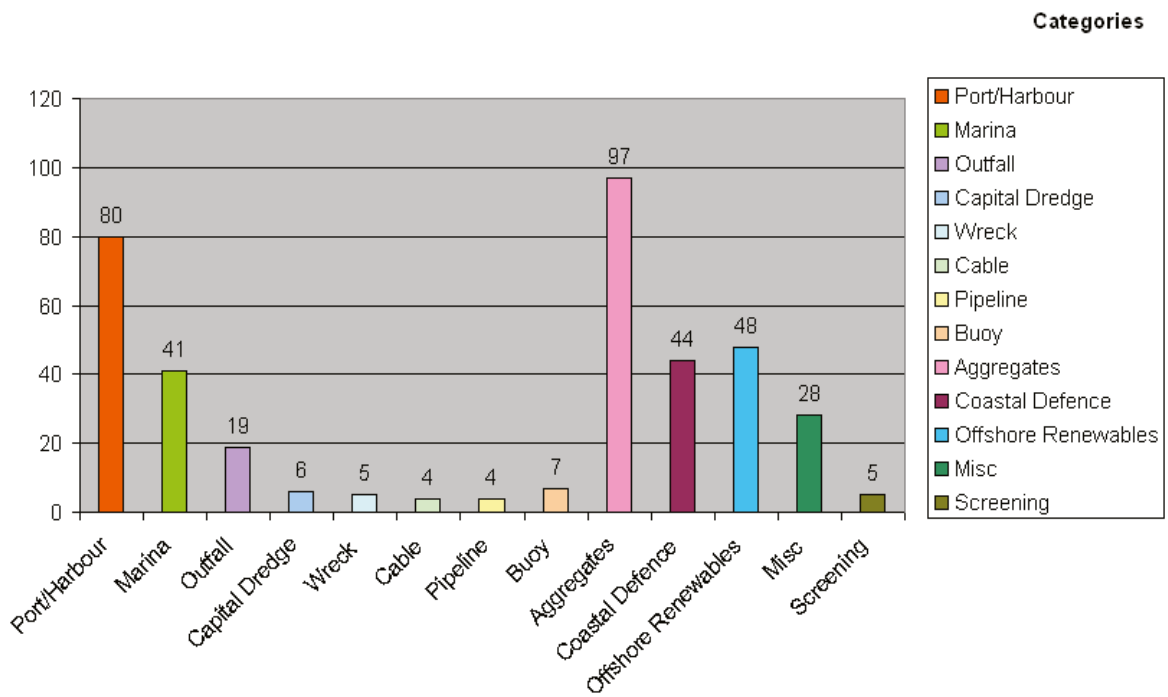
**Four-year resource:** £270k

### Protection Result 6A6.1: Advice on marine licensing and marine consents

The English Heritage Marine Planning Unit (MPU) is consulted on foreshore and marine development projects under the following legislation:

- Pre-application and application procedures for National Significant Infrastructure projects under the Planning Act 2008 (as amended),
- At application stage under national regulatory consent or licence e.g. Marine Licence under Marine & Coastal Access Act 2009; and Harbour Revision Orders under Harbours Act 1964,
- The Marine Works (Environmental Impact Assessment) (Amendment) Regulations 2011.

Consultations are received from the Marine Management Organisation (MMO), the competent authority for Marine Licensing under Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009, including sub-national infrastructure projects that require consent under the Harbours Act 1964. We also deal directly with developers and consultants preparing National Significant Infrastructure projects as part of prescribed pre-application negotiation and consultation provisions under the Planning Act 2008. Advice is also provided for SEA exercises for marine programmes such as energy generation (oil, gas and renewables) and Impact Assessments for nature conservation designation programmes (eg Natura 2000 and Marine Conservation Zones). The MPU continues to work with the MMO to support implementation of the Marine and Coastal Access Act with particular reference to drafting guidance on projects subject to licence or proposals for exemptions and the preparation of marine plans. To support our contribution to the introduction of marine planning, we commissioned a project through NHPP, which is now completed (EH ref: 5460 "Marine Spatial Planning and the Historic Environment", prepared by Fjordr Consulting, February 2013) The Marine Planning Unit also supports marine casework delivery through local offices for port projects subject to EIA. The MPU has a national remit, but is hosted by the South East office in Guildford.



Protection of Wrecks Act 1973 licensing and associated work associated with management of designated historic shipwreck sites (e.g. initiatives to support visitor access through the establishment of diver trails) is delivered by Heritage Protection Department.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## ACTIVITY 6BI: STRATEGIC CONDITION MONITORING

### Context

Protection and management of change in the historic environment requires a clear understanding of the condition of heritage assets and places. Through our Heritage at Risk programme we will continue to monitor, understand and publish information on the condition of a wide range of heritage assets as a way of informing subsequent management. Results will feed into foresight and the prioritisation of resources for both EH and the wider sector. We will undertake annual surveys on heritage assets in English waters on

behalf of DCMS. Through our advisory work for HM Revenue & Customs, we will continue to recommend outstanding historic entities for beneficial tax treatment available under the Conditional Exemption scheme and monitor their condition thereafter to ensure an exemplary standard of management.

**Activity Lead:** Debra Longley, Heritage At Risk Project Manager ([debra.longley@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:debra.longley@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £3.297M

### Protection Result 6BI.1: Evidence of condition of England's designated historic environment through strategic monitoring

In terms of strategic condition monitoring, English Heritage's primary response has been through the extremely important Heritage at Risk initiative. Heritage at Risk provides information on grade I and II\* listed buildings (and grade II listed buildings in Greater London), listed places of worship, scheduled monuments, registered parks and gardens, registered battlefields, protected wreck sites and conservation areas. The [Register](#) and [Official Statistics](#) are published on the English Heritage website annually. EH also undertakes regular surveys of our Protected Wrecks annually as part of our responsibilities to DCMS.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Teams are working towards the publication of the Official Statistics in August and the launch of the 2013 Heritage at Risk in October. However, the NPCD restructuring has left vacancies in some teams that will not be filled in time for those posts to feed into updating their condition and management information in time for the statistics to be produced. Options are being explored as to how these resource gaps can be covered during the interim to ensure that the statistics can be produced in August.

The Quinquennial Inspection Review project on listed places of Worship (PoWs) is providing condition information from existing architects' reports. This is being used to prioritise which listed places of worship are visited first and surveyed for inclusion on the HAR Register. Local teams have committed to visiting and surveying all those that have been reported as being in poor or very bad condition in time for the production of the 2014 Official Statistics. Local teams are yet to set out how they are going to achieve this deadline.

The national strategy was published in 2012. Local HAR service delivery teams will each be compiling a work plan that will set out their approach and priorities (including work on listed PoWs) for HAR locally. There is no official timetable for when these work plans will be complete. Once complete, they will be used to inform an update of the national strategy, to check that it is current and relevant.

**Date of completion:** Official Statistics – August 2013; HAR Register and launch – October 13; Local HAR work plans – unknown; Condition monitoring work – Ongoing.

**6428 HAR Grade II pilots**

Following a call for proposals, pilots are being commissioned and will complete by the end of August 2013. This project will explore the various options and test methodologies for expanding EH's HAR programme to include grade II listed buildings. Pilot projects will be initiated to evaluate various ways in which grade II listed buildings can be surveyed (using EH's Buildings at Risk (BAR) methodology), capturing the survey information, publishing the data on those sites that are known to be at risk, and identifying possible solutions and intervention strategies for tackling grade II BARs. The findings from the pilots will inform a decision on whether or not national coverage of grade IIs can be achieved. The results of the pilot projects will be announced as part of the October HAR launch.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** 17 of the 19 pilot projects have been commissioned, with the remaining 2 expecting to be commissioned very shortly. There is at least 1 pilot in every locality except London (as there are already Grade II listed buildings on the London HAR Register).

An evaluation project has been commissioned to assess the success of the pilots and to inform the decision on whether or not national coverage can be achieved.

**Date of completion:** September/October 2013.

## Protection Result 6BI.2: Strategic condition data on heritage assets in English waters

**Condition monitoring of Protected Wrecks in UK waters**

The UK-wide contract for archaeological services to support marine designation is administered by English Heritage and ends on 31st March 2013. From April 2013, two contracts will facilitate archaeological services across the UK.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Field visits for 2012 were completed in early September and reports have been received for wider dissemination. A contractor, to provide archaeological services for England, has been appointed for 2013 to 2015 and we are currently appointing a contractor to service a contract for Scotland, Wales & Northern Ireland for 2013 to 2015.

**Date of completion:** March 2015.

## Protection Result 6BI.3: Assessment of impact of piecemeal change on the distinctiveness and value of conservation areas and other protected zones

Research is planned for later in the NHPP period, with the first project looking at how people value residential properties within conservation areas due to report by the end of this financial year.

**Conservation Area survey of significance erosion**

As well as the condition monitoring work undertaken at a local level by NPD teams (predominantly the Historic Environment Field Advisers), COSMIC 3, which is being delivered through 2D1, will contribute towards this activity. For an update, please see 2D1.

## Protection Result 6BI.4: Outstanding historic entities are being preserved, maintained and repaired as part of conditional tax exemption

### HMRC Condition monitoring

Conditional exemption from certain capital taxes (primarily inheritance tax) is available for heritage property deemed to be of outstanding interest under a variety of headings. It can cover objects, works of art, land and buildings.

Favourable tax arrangements are also available for income-generating maintenance funds established for the care of heritage property. Outright exemption is available for property given to HM Treasury in lieu of tax or for property sold by private treaty to certain heritage organisations. These tax reliefs are administered by HM Revenue & Customs and are given in return for undertakings providing for the preservation, maintenance and repair of the property and for the provision of public access to them. English Heritage advises HMRC on historic environment property that qualifies for the exemptions:

- Land of outstanding historic interest;
- buildings of outstanding architectural or historic interest;
- amenity land which is essential for the preservation of the character and amenities of outstanding buildings;
- objects which are historically associated with outstanding buildings.

The suite of exemptions serves to ensure that outstanding historic entities – typically a country house in its parkland setting and with its furnishings and collections – can remain intact.

English Heritage provides formal advice on new claims for exemption and applications to establish maintenance funds to determine the eligibility of the property put forward and to recommend the management and public access conditions to be included in the agreement between HMRC and the owner. For properties granted the exemption, English Heritage provides a monitoring service based on site visits, undertaken periodically according to circumstances, along with ad hoc advice in the event of any proposals for development on exempt land and buildings and disposals of exempt property.

English Heritage's involvement in the scheme helps ensure that the indirect subsidy available through the deferral or outright waiver of tax is applied to suitable property, that suitable safeguards covering preservation, maintenance and repair are observed and that guaranteed public access is provided. Crucially, it supports and reinforces the care and management of some of the nation's most important individual heritage assets and historic entities through periodic site inspections. Through building effective partnerships with the owners – for the most part private though with a few charitable bodies – English Heritage can gauge the threats and risks to which historic estates are subject and pass on national-level expertise to promote the exemplary management of an important category of complex and significant historic environment assets.

#### **Status:** ●

**Progress:** During the reporting year, English Heritage issued formal advice on 7 claims for conditional exemption or applications to establish maintenance funds for historic environment property or renewals of existing exemption agreements. There have been no cases involving offers in lieu of tax or private treaty sales of historic environment property. Formal advice has been provided on 1 proposal for development on exempt land.

A programme of periodic monitoring visits is undertaken by English Heritage on existing conditionally exempt properties. This programme is organised according to an annual timetable. A monitoring visit was made to 23 properties during the year. Monitoring information was provided on a further three: two on the basis of recent prior knowledge of the site and one on the basis of photographs and other information supplied by a fellow agency.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.







## **MEASURE 7. MANAGING MAJOR HOLDINGS OF HISTORIC ASSETS**

Many organisations (including the National Trust, English Heritage, the Church of England, and the Crown Estate etc) are responsible for protecting and managing significant collections of historic sites, properties and associated archives and collections. Protecting and managing change to these assets is therefore a vital and integral part of their contribution to the protection and management of the historic environment. This measure sets out the general activities through which this is accomplished. It does not, however, include programmes and expenditure committed to developing the visitor experience or increasing income to support the wider work of the organisation.

Protecting and managing English Heritage historic properties comprises the following two Activities:

- 7A1 ASSET MANAGEMENT PLAN
- 7A2 PROPERTIES CHANGE MANAGEMENT
- 7A3 SECURING ARCHIVES AND COLLECTIONS
- 7A4 PRESERVATION OF HISTORIC ARTEFACTS AND INTERIORS

The four year allocation of resource (including staff and funding) for this measure for 2011-15 is **£82.01M**

## ACTIVITY 7AI: ASSET MANAGEMENT PLAN

### Context

English Heritage has developed and is operating an Asset Management Plan to govern the protection of our historic properties. This is based on a detailed understanding of their condition and significance, allowing current and future conservation needs to be addressed and anticipated through the Properties Conservation Programme. This is accompanied by the

Properties Maintenance Programme, addressing regular and cyclical maintenance, and programmes to conserve our historic artefact collections and archives.

**Activity Lead:** Julie Swann, Asset Management Plan Programme Manager ([julie.swann@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:julie.swann@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £74.428M

### Protection Result 7AI.1: English Heritage properties brought to benchmark condition and maintained in that state

English Heritage publishes its Asset Management Plan (AMP) separately. The NHPP Progress and Year End Reports will not contain information on the AMP and readers are directed to the AMP web page on our website at: <http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/about/who-we-are/corporate-information/plan-maintaining-our-historic-estate/>



Silbury Hill, Wiltshire (7A2), Photo by James O. Davies, © English Heritage.

## ACTIVITY 7A2: MANAGING CHANGE AT ENGLISH HERITAGE HISTORIC PROPERTIES

### Context

English Heritage expertise and advice is applied to any development or change to our historic estate just as it is to any other designated asset. Evaluation of the impact of any development or requirement for change on the significance of the asset, and the provision of expert advice to enable the enhancement or protection of significance, form the focus of this Activity.

**Activity Lead:** Brian Kerr, Head of Intervention and Analysis ([brian.kerr@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:brian.kerr@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £2.441M

### Protection Result 7A2.1: Preservation of the significance of EH heritage assets subject to change, or offset of loss through enhanced understanding

Detailed research from investigations resulting from significant change are underway on several of our properties, where redevelopment has required archaeological or architectural investigation in advance of works. There have been impacts on the progress of these relating to the current restructuring at English Heritage.

#### **3696 Landscape investigation and excavation: Chester Amphitheatre**

A major research project into the Roman amphitheatre at Chester and its landscape context.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The Project Design for Analysis for Volume 1 (Roman) has been completed, and work on the first tranche of publication illustrations is well advanced. The assessment of charred plant remains from the prehistoric features has been completed. Material for the dating of key contexts has been extracted and submitted.

#### **3866 Investigation and management in support of a garden restoration project: Kenilworth Castle Elizabethan Garden**

Investigation and management in support of a garden restoration project: Kenilworth Castle Elizabethan Garden.

**Status:** Project complete.

**Progress:** The project was completed at the end of May 2012 with the delivery of the completed book on garden reconstruction to the publisher. The project was successful in that it provided what information survived on the form and layout of the 16th-century garden, critically locating the foundations of the fountain which confirmed the main axis of the garden and fatally undermining the 1975 reconstruction. The project also ensured that the archaeological remains were protected during reconstruction, and the results of the work have fed into an improved visitor experience as well as site presentation and the guidebook.

**Date of completion:** May 2012.

#### **4584 Excavation in support of a property development project: Chiswick House Facilities Project**

Evaluation and mitigation excavations carried out in conjunction with construction of new visitor facilities at Chiswick House.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The combined Assessment Report and Project Design for Analysis and Dissemination was completed in mid-March, and has been circulated for comment. The archives of 23 previous interventions at Chiswick have also been integrated into the digital plans and a gazetteer of these interventions has been created.

**Date of completion:** Summer 2014.

**4936 Archaeological evaluation and intervention: Silbury Hill**

Landscape investigation and archaeological recording and analysis project based on the emergency conservation works carried out to stabilise Silbury Hill.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The Project Design for Analysis for Volume I (Roman) has been completed, and work on the first tranche of publication illustrations is well advanced. The assessment of charred plant remains from the prehistoric features has been completed. Material for the dating of key contexts has been extracted and submitted.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

**4957 Investigation of a Building at Risk in EH care: Ditherington Flax Mill and Maltings**

Investigation of the flax mill and maltings built from 1797 at Shrewsbury to inform the conservation of this Building at Risk bought by EH in 2005.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Documentary research, on-site investigation and survey to update previous publications have continued. The early site chronology has been enhanced and the project has provided new understanding on production processes and power in the mill, developing previous ideas, writing draft text for internal chapters and starting edits to the draft chapters supplied by contractors, and adding new text.

**Date of completion:** Summer 2015.

**4967 Architectural Surveys of Historic EH Buildings: Wigmore Castle**

Publication of report and archiving of archaeological and architectural analysis carried out in conjunction with consolidation project.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Final corrections to the drawings and the text have now been made so all that remains is to produce the RRS report.

**Date of completion:** December 2013.

**4984 Excavation in support of Apethorpe Hall project: Apethorpe Hall Courtyard**

Evaluation of the results of geophysical survey and architectural analysis in the main courtyard at Apethorpe.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** Work continues on the assessment. The pottery assessment has been completed. Investigative conservation of the iron and copper alloy objects has been completed, and the results published (McCormack D, RRS 3-2013).

**4989 Archaeological evaluation and intervention: Whitby Abbey consolidated site archive and assessment**

This is a grouping, for assessment and archive purposes, of three distinct projects – Evaluation and HLF (development-related), Cemetery (research for interpretation) and Whitby Cliff (threat-led – erosion).

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Good progress continues, with the stratigraphic summary for the Cliff-top excavations having been completed and work on the HLF project started. The assessment of the Cemetery is being reviewed with the aim of returning to the site in October 2013 to clarify important points of detail in small-scale excavations. The monograph proposal has been accepted by English Heritage Publications Board, and will be published as an EH Monograph.

**Date of completion:** Assessment December 2013.

**4965 Investigation of a Building at Risk in EH care: Baguley Hall**

Architectural investigation in support of repairs to this Building at Risk.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** As previously reported, work on completing this project had been delayed in 2011 by the secondment of the project manager to Cambridge University, which has since been further extended. The work is now programmed to be completed in 2013.

**4991 Audley End Landscape**

Survey and analysis to inform understanding, interpretation and presentation of Audley End House and its context.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The completion of the research project has been agreed and programmed, but the project remains on hold due to the pressure of other commitments for the project manager. It is hoped to be able to resume work on this project later in 2013.

**4992 Investigation and excavation in support of a new garden project: Carisbrooke Castle**

Analysis of the results of the mitigation and research excavations carried out at Carisbrooke in advance of the construction of a new garden in the Privy Garden area.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The Assessment Report is now being prepared for publication in the Research Reports Series. Following revisions to the UPD, a short analysis programme is now underway; analysis of the marine shell is complete, and good progress is being made on the clay tobacco pipes.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

**4993 Architectural Surveys of Historic Buildings in EH care: Apethorpe Hall**

Investigation of the house and landscape at Apethorpe as part of an emergency repair project.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** A new editor has been appointed. Chapter 1 has been submitted and will be revised in light of recent reinterpretation. New publication schedule agreed.

**Date of completion:** Early 2015.

**5115 Excavation to evaluate response to flooding problems: Hailes Abbey**

Evaluation of earthwork remains to mitigate proposals to relieve damaging seasonal flooding at Hailes.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The Assessment report has been published as [RRS 26-2012](#). The analysis programme is running well. Pollen analysis of deposits from the pond has been completed.

**Date of completion:** December 2014.

**5196 Investigation of Historic EH Landscape: Wrest Park**

Investigation and evaluation of the designated park and gardens in advance of restoration and repair.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Work has now resumed on the integrated Research Report, and it is anticipated that this will be completed in 2013.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

**5628 Dover Castle**

Excavation as part of a major re-design of the displays at Dover Castle.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** This project is on hold due to the project manager's other commitments. We have been waiting for the former project manager to complete the stratigraphic assessment.

**5629 Richborough**

Excavation in the area of the fallen east wall and possible Roman waterfront in order to establish chronology of erosion/ silting, and character of Roman waterfront.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** On hold as planned, due to the other heavy commitments of the project manager.

**5689 Research arising from Silbury Hill project: Understanding the old land surface at Silbury**

A small research project into the formation processes that created the grey 'trample' layer at the base of Silbury Hill.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** This project remains dormant. As previously reported, the results were incorporated in the Silbury Hill analysis and monograph (7A2.101), but the project will be revisited in c. 1.5 years to determine whether further work is necessary.

**5836 Birdoswald Cemetery Mitigation**

Excavation in advance of river erosion.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** This project is now on hold due to the other commitments of the project manager, as planned.

**5890 Investigation of damp penetration of an EH property: Fort Cumberland Valley Gutter Investigation**

Evaluation of part of the covered way to investigate the cause of damp problems in the casemates below.

**Status:** ●

**Reason for status:** The completion of this project had been carried over into 2012-13 because of the pressures of restructuring. The work is nearly completed and drawings are now ready for publication. The Research Report will be published in 2013.

**Date of completion:** March 2014.

**6107 Lidar and NMP Review Project: Avebury WHS**

Review of the 1999 NMP survey of Avebury in light of recent work including Lidar survey.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The work was checked in 2012, and the data entered into WebGIS. A decision remains to be taken on whether to publish this work separately.



### 6500 Archaeological evaluation and intervention: Stonehenge World Heritage Site

Landscape investigation of the Stonehenge area within the WHS to inform interpretation and current management issues, including the development of the new visitor centre.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Work on the remaining RRS (Research Report Series) reports has been completed, and work started on background research for the landscape monograph, beginning to draft the first three chapters. Timetable for delivery to Publications Team set for December 2013.

**Date of completion:** December 2013.

### 6759 Kirby Hall

This project aims to facilitate better protection and management of change at Kirby Hall by increasing understanding of the site and its wider landscape. This will be achieved through a programme of targeted survey and investigation work, combined with an assessment of documentary, map and existing archaeological evidence, with the project results disseminated in the form of an English Heritage report. The information in the report will be used to inform future management decisions at the English Heritage historic property in a way which will enhance or protect significance.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** The contract for building analysis was awarded to Wessex Archaeology, who completed a draft report which was reviewed in a meeting on site on 26th March. This will be revised by mid-May, and will incorporate the results from a further tranche of dendrochronological sampling. Landscape analysis of the Wilderness Garden, DMV and the environs of the house has been carried out.

**Date of completion:** Publication programme set by September 2013.



Kirby Hall, Deene, Nr Corby, Northamptonshire. Photo by Patricia Payne, © English Heritage.

## ACTIVITY 7A3: PRESERVATION OF ENGLISH HERITAGE ARCHIVE HOLDINGS

### Context

English Heritage is responsible for major archival collections of photographs, plans, reports and other records. These support the analysis and understanding of the historic environment of England, and are also of national importance in their own right. This Activity focuses on series of projects aimed at ensuring that the archives in EH custody are appropriately stored

and managed, and that they remain accessible for future generations.

**Activity Lead:** Mike Evans, Head of Archives, National Collections ([mike.evans@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:mike.evans@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £2.27M

### Protection Result 7A3.1: Archive collections in EH custody stored in conditions which support their long term preservation

#### Replacement of EH archive store infrastructure

Collections of photographic negatives are particularly vulnerable to storage in poor environmental conditions. The plant which maintains environmental conditions in the EH Archive Store is nearing the end of its design life, and has been suffering increased failure rates. In addition the plant uses a refrigerant gas which will fail to comply with EU Directives from 2015. The current project will replace key elements of the infrastructure, so guaranteeing our ability to maintain target environmental conditions in the Store and so extend the life of our nationally important collections.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** Work is proceeding on the replacement of plant to timescale and to budget. The new plant is now maintaining temperature and relative humidity in 5 vaults within the specified parameters, and we have been able to reduce the target temperature in selected vaults from 8 deg C to 6 deg C, so that conditions sit more firmly within the "cold" band specified by relevant standards. The new plant operates significantly more efficiently than that which it replaces, and it is anticipated that this will lead to a smaller green footprint and savings in running costs.

**Date of completion:** September 2013.

#### State of the EH archive holding

Conservation section staff based in Swindon will carry out an integrated condition and risk audit of the EH Archive holdings. This will help us to identify those areas of our collections which are most at risk and to proactively manage and mitigate those risks. The Survey will be based on the methodology developed for the EH National Collections Condition Audit, as well as the experience of The National Archives. It will provide an evidence base from which strategic, evidence-based decisions can be made regarding the care of the holdings.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** A survey methodology was developed in August 2012 and piloted in October 2012. As a result of the pilot it was decided to increase the size of the survey sample, and short term conservator and assistant conservator posts funded to support this increase. The survey work will be completed by the end of March 2013, a risk assessment prepared in April and May, and an analysis of the combined results prepared by the end of August 2013.

**Date of completion:** July 2013/August 2013.

## ACTIVITY 7A4: PRESERVATION OF ENGLISH HERITAGE HISTORIC ARTEFACTS AND INTERIORS

### Context

English Heritage is responsible for an internationally significant collection of historic artefacts. As well as being integral to the National Collection of historic properties, they are also a major resource for research and understanding of the past. This Activity focuses on the work we do to properly curate and conserve them to ensure they are handed on to future generations in the best possible condition.

**Activity Leads:** Martin Allfrey, Head Curator of Collections, National Collections ([martin.allfrey@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:martin.allfrey@english-heritage.org.uk)); Amber Xavier-Rowe, Head of Collections Conservation, National Collections ([amber.xavier-rowe@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:amber.xavier-rowe@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £2.87M

Protection Result 7A4.1: Historic artefacts in EH custody are stored and displayed in ways which support their long term preservation

This is a new Activity which will be reported on in the next report.



## MEASURE 8. HELP AND ADVICE FOR OWNERS

The most important participants in the protection of our heritage are owners. They are responsible for its upkeep and they play a hugely significant role in determining whether or not a given asset or landscape will survive to be enjoyed by future generations. Timely and expert advice can often avert risk and protect assets. The provision of grant-aid is desirable where justified and where the alternative would be substantial or complete loss. Even with this capacity, it is not always practical to save some assets (for example from loss by natural erosion, or through inadvertent disturbance outside any planning or management framework. We therefore also provide some funding (where appropriate) to ensure that when faced with inevitable and unavoidable loss, in such cases the core significance is not lost for ever but translated into public benefit through increased understanding.

Protection through expert advice and grants comprises the following five Activities:

- 8A1 REDUCING RISK TO HERITAGE ASSETS THROUGH EXPERT ADVICE
- 8A2 BUILDING VOLUNTARY SECTOR CAPACITY TO MANAGE AND CONSERVE HERITAGE ASSETS
- 8A3 REDUCING RISK TO HERITAGE ASSETS THROUGH REPAIR GRANTS
- 8A4 REDUCING RISK TO HERITAGE ASSETS THROUGH ACQUISITION AND REPAIR
- 8A5 OFFSETTING LOSS THROUGH KNOWLEDGE DIVIDEND

The four year allocation of resource (including staff and funding) for this measure for 2011-15 is **£74.245M**

## ACTIVITY 8A: ADVICE AND GRANT-AID TO PROTECT SIGNIFICANCE

All grants offered by English Heritage to sites and monuments are assessed against our national and local grant priorities, as well as the scheme's criteria. The national priorities are:

- Significant elements of the historic environment at risk; and/or
- Activities that strengthen the ability of the sector to reduce or avoid risk to the historic environment by understanding, managing and conserving.

The figures in both number and value of grant offered to address at risk elements are detailed in Table 3.

Scheme/Type	2010/11		2012/13	
	No	Value (£M)	No	Value (£M)
<i>Secular</i>	117	£8.20	116	£8.95
<i>Areas</i>	25	£1.59	14	£0.87
<i>Places of Worship</i>	1	£0.05	1	£0.04
<i>S17 Management Agreements</i>	88	£0.50	74	£0.41
<i>Capacity Building</i>	66	£4.81	28	£0.75
<i>War Memorials</i>	6	£0.03	4	£0.04
	<b>303</b>	<b>£15.18</b>	<b>237</b>	<b>£11.06</b>

Table 3. 8A1-8A4: Summary of grant-aid activity (offers of grant) | April 2012 to 31 Mar 2013

## ACTIVITY 8A1: REDUCING RISK TO HERITAGE ASSETS THROUGH EXPERT ADVICE

### Context

Central to reducing the level of risk to the significance of the nation's heritage is the deployment of expert advice targeted on finding solutions. This may be through advice given by Local Authorities or by national and local organisations (such as English Heritage, and national and local amenity societies). It also includes guidance produced by a wide range of bodies (such as EH, SPAB, IHBC,

ALGAO) and publications such as the Practical Building Conservation series and Constructive Conservation (EH).

**Activity Lead:** Greg Luton, Planning Director East of England ([greg.luton@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:greg.luton@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £5.854M

### Protection Result 8A1.1: Repair or other action agreed with owners/managers of Heritage at Risk sites

Our local teams provide regular advice to owners/managers of sites to help them repair and remove these sites from the Heritage at Risk Register.

**Pentre Isaf, Oswestry** is an unmodernised grade II\* farmhouse. Originally a 15th-century timber-framed hall house of typical Welsh pattern, the interior retains its dais screen. Later alterations in the 17th and 19th centuries mean that the exterior is almost completely clad in stone. The farmhouse forms part of an attractive historic group with listed barns, byres and pigsties set around a courtyard. It was part of an estate and has been rented to tenant farmers.

When the last tenant died the condition of the building deteriorated further putting the farmhouse at risk. Unoccupied for three years, Pentre Isaf suffered from a lack of maintenance coupled with longer term repair issues meaning the roof and rainwater goods were failing. Water penetration had rotted the surviving elements of the timber frame on the north elevation, and there were structural cracks in the stonework. The building required complete upgrading, re-roofing, structural repairs and general repairs to windows. In spring 2012, Pentre Isaf was sold to a new owner who is committed to its repair. English Heritage has provided advice on repairs and alterations, and an application for listed building consent has been completed. It is anticipated that repairs will finish in 2013 and the building will come off the Heritage at Risk Register in 2014.



**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## Protection Result 8AI.2: Repair or other action facilitated through expert advice to partner organisations

English Heritage continues to offer advice to other grant giving bodies including the Heritage Lottery Fund and Natural England, providing map-based information highlighting where Heritage at Risk sites are located to help target funding.

The South West has the lion's share of scheduled monuments at risk. The local team provides advice to Natural England on including such sites in Higher Level Stewardship (HLS) schemes to secure their future. One recent HLS proposal will conserve a **post-medieval duck decoy (an artificial pond for managing waterfowl) in the Somerset levels** and give it an exciting new use. The monument is overgrown with reeds and willows and has become in-filled with silt, blurring its star-shape form and its visibility in the landscape, and placing it at high risk on our Register. But the RSPB, partners to the scheme, intend the restored pond to become part of a landmark project to reintroduce the Great Crane to this wetland habitat.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## Protection Result 8AI.3: Repair or other action facilitated through published general technical conservation guidance

English Heritage has revised and updated its highly regarded series of conservation handbooks, Practical Building Conservation (first published in 1988). The first five volumes were published in 2012 and a further two volumes were published in March 2013. The remaining three volumes will be published later this year. The new series has not only been updated to cover the latest techniques and materials, but has been greatly expanded and copiously illustrated. The contents reflect the work of the Building Conservation and Research team, their colleagues at English Heritage and their consultants and researchers, who together have many decades of accumulated experience in dealing with deteriorating building materials and systems of all types. Materials and techniques covered by the first seven volumes include Conservation Basics; Concrete; Glass and Glazing; Metals; Mortars, Renders and Plasters; Stone; Timber. The other volumes in the series are: Building Environment; Earth, Brick and Terracotta; Roofing.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.





## ACTIVITY 8A2: BUILDING SPECIALIST CAPACITY/SKILLS TO MANAGE AND CONSERVE HERITAGE ASSETS

### Context

The historic environment benefits greatly from conservation work undertaken by a wide range of organisations, from local authorities to charitable and voluntary bodies. Via funding, we help to develop the specialist capacity and skills in other organisations to manage the historic environment and prevent/tackle Heritage at Risk. This falls into three main areas: supporting national specialist organisations, expert/

specialist capacity building locally and our programme of Places of Worship Support Officers.

**Activity Lead:** Carol Pyrah, Planning Director North East ([carol.pyrah@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:carol.pyrah@english-heritage.org.uk)) but see relevant Grant Scheme for application details.

**Four-year resource:** £7.532M

### Protection Result 8A2.1: National specialist charitable organisations are enabled to better manage and conserve heritage assets

In 2012/13, English Heritage offered funding through the National Capacity Building programme to 16 organisations. This came to a total of just over £1.1m supporting 18 projects.

One of the projects supported by this funding was a new public website for the Joint Committee of National Amenity Societies. The site, called **Heritage Help**, acts as a portal for voluntary bodies in the built heritage sector to bring together their shared expertise. It is hoped that **Heritage Help** will grow into a one-stop shop for individuals and local communities seeking advice and examples of good conservation practice.

The site was launched in early 2013 and has been very well received thus far, with the Princes Regeneration Trust recently expressing an interest in supporting the initiative long-term.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.



## Protection Result 8A2.2: The risk to heritage reduced through specialist local capacity-building and skills development

Nationally there were 16 grants offered towards Heritage at Risk through the Regional Capacity Building Grant scheme, totalling £843,176. This included funding towards the Places of Worship Support Officers (8A2.3)

The **Lake District National Park** has the greatest concentration of scheduled monuments in the North West region – and consequently the greatest number of monuments at risk. For the past 3 years English Heritage in the North West has jointly funded (via our Regional Capacity Building Grant) a project at the LDNP which aims to resurvey all of the monuments, identify the threats, work with Natural England to secure stewardship funding for the sites and to train volunteers on the correct ways of reducing these threats. In most cases the monuments are buried archaeology, and the greatest threat has been found to be bracken – the roots of which are very invasive. To kill off this invasive bracken is time consuming and labour intensive – requiring it to be cut to the ground twice a year during the key growing season for a period of at least 3 years. In 2012 English Heritage offered an enhancement to our grant so the LDNP authority could buy 3 more sets of petrol-driven strimmers and the safety equipment required in order to help the volunteer groups clear a much greater area of bracken at more sites during the crucial growing time. The project has been very successful so far in all of its objectives. A number of sites at risk have come off our register and more are expected to follow this year. As a result of this success English Heritage have offered a further 3 years of grant-aid to develop the volunteer network, continue the work on the scheduled monuments and also to extend it to assess the many structural scheduled monuments and listed buildings in the park.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## Protection Result 8A2.3: Places of Worship enabled to better manage and conserve heritage assets through Places of Worship Support Officers

English Heritage is currently grant-aiding 22 Places of Worship Support Officers throughout the country. We have so far invested £2.17m in Support Officers. We know those Officers have helped congregations secure at least £1.3m in grants, mostly for repairs but also for some widening of use and improved access for non-worshippers. 1574 congregations have received on site visits and ongoing advice - countless others have been helped by telephone and email, by the 63 guidance notes and 79 visitor guides published. More than 6,500 individuals have benefitted from conferences, workshops and other training.

A report on **Church Buildings in the Diocese of Lincoln** has been produced jointly by the Historic Churches Support Officer (half-funded by EH) and the Church Development Officer. Based on the comprehensive Quinquennial Inspection (QI) survey carried out by the Support Officer in 2010-12, the report contains lots of useful and illuminating statistics on repair costs, non-worship uses, lead theft and other concerns.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## ACTIVITY 8A3: REDUCING RISK TO HERITAGE ASSETS THROUGH REPAIR GRANTS

### Context

To protect and preserve significant sites from loss we run a substantial grants programme targeted on vulnerable heritage assets where other sources of funding for urgent repairs are not available. We have also developed partnerships with other grant-giving bodies to deliver specialist programmes for high priority sites such as places of worship and war memorials. We assist local authorities use their powers of intervention to rescue buildings through statutory action. Besides

grant itself, we provide technical advice during projects and a rounded monitoring regime afterwards, to ensure that public benefits such as visitor access and continuing maintenance are secured.

**Activity Lead:** Greg Luton, Planning Director East of England ([greg.luton@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:greg.luton@english-heritage.org.uk)) but see relevant Grant Scheme for application details.

**Four-year resource:** £50.684M

### Protection Result 8A3.1: Heritage at Risk sites repaired and removed from the Register

We give grants for major repair projects on important heritage sites through our Historic Buildings, Monuments and Designed Landscapes' (HBMDL) Scheme. In 2012 £9.3m was offered towards 191 sites nationally on the register, towards repairs, investigations and project development. The repairs for these properties may take a number of years to complete due to the complexity of the cases.

**549 Lordship Lane, Southwark** was a long-standing Heritage at Risk case in London, having been placed on an early buildings at risk register in 1994. A suburban detached house, built in 1873 by the Patent Concrete Building Company and listed at grade II, it suffered from serious structural problems.

The London Borough of Southwark acquired the building in 2010 with a Compulsory Purchase Order served under the Housing Acts. The building has now been repaired and converted into 5 flats by a Building Preservation Trust, HOLT Ops working with a Housing Association. It is due to be removed from the Heritage at Risk register this year.

In 2010 English Heritage provided grant aid of £10,000 towards project development work estimated to cost £25,000. A subsequent grant of £100,000 was made towards urgent structural repairs, including repairs to walls, roofs, windows and doors, estimated at £256,000. Grant eligible works were completed March 2013.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## Protection Result 8A3.2: War Memorials conserved and repaired by their community

Since 2004, English Heritage and the Wolfson Foundation have jointly funded a **Grants for War Memorials** scheme run in partnership with War Memorials Trust. So far £800,000 has been given out for more than 250 projects in England. In 2012/13 9 grants were given out, totalling around £80,000.

From April 2013 the annual amount of funding available will double to £200,000 for the next two years. The maximum for each award will increase to £30,000 and applications can now be made for up to 75% of the eligible costs. These include the cost of repair, conservation, cleaning and work to improve the legibility of inscriptions, along with professional fees and VAT. The number of bidding rounds has been increased from two to four annually to handle the anticipated increase in applications. It is hoped that many more people will come forward to apply for grants in the run up to the centenary of the events of the First World War.

At **Halse, Taunton, Somerset** the memorial consists of a Latin cross on a three stepped base and a large square plinth, all constructed from Limestone. There is a bronze inscription plaque at the base of the memorial commemorating the men of the Parish who died in service during World War I and World War II. In 2012 a grant was offered towards the repointing of the memorial joints, which were first raked out using hand tools to remove loose and defective mortar; then a lime mortar mix which was colour matched to the stone was used. SmartWater was applied to the bronze plaque as part of the In Memoriam 2014 project.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.



## Protection Result 8A3.3: Places of worship repaired and enabled to continue in use

2012/13 was the final year for applications to the Repair Grants for Places of Worship scheme which was administered by English Heritage with the majority of the funding given by the Heritage Lottery Fund. 218 new grant offers were made totalling £22,830,000. 66 enhancements totalling £1,870,000 were also made to previously funded grants so the total grant offer in the year was £24,700,000. The scheme has now been replaced by the Heritage Lottery Fund's GPOW scheme. English Heritage continues to provide specialist advice to HLF for applications it receives.

English Heritage/HLF grant-aid has helped the churchwardens of **St Peter's in Wilburton, Cambridgeshire** carry out essential repairs to the timber spire of their grade I church which is a focal point for the village community. The high spire with its gilded cockerel weathervane sits atop a 13th-century tower. The base of the spire was extremely unsafe and put the church at risk. The repair work also provided access which enabled additional repairs to the tower parapets and stairs to be carried out at the same time. The Church received additional charitable funding from Cambridgeshire Historic Churches Trust, the Garfield Weston Foundation, the Wolfson Trust, and the Veneziana Fund. The repaired spire was unveiled in Autumn 2012 to coincide with the congregation's annual work-day in the church.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## Protection Result 8A3.4: Support for protecting Conservation Areas at risk

English Heritage has continued to offer support for Conservation Areas at Risk through the Partnership Scheme in Conservation Areas (PSiCA). In 2012 a total of £878k was offered to 14 schemes. These delegated schemes are administered through local planning authorities which identify target buildings and structures within the Conservation Area that harm or contribute detrimentally to the overall significance of the Conservation Area.

At **Castlegate and Bridge Street, Berwick**, this year saw the third year of funding for two area partnership schemes. Over £169,000 was offered to Bridge Street where 9 historic buildings have been repaired so far. In Castlegate, English Heritage grant-aid of £189,000 has repaired 6 buildings. The scheme, managed by Northumberland County Council is a real success and complements various other town regeneration initiatives.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

Photos © Annette Reeves, Northamptonshire County Council



Before



After

## ACTIVITY 8A4: REDUCING RISK TO HERITAGE ASSETS THROUGH ACQUISITION AND REPAIR

### Context

As a last resort, where owners and other agencies have not been able to take the necessary action to protect a key building or monument, English Heritage may be able to take ownership for only as long as it takes to carry out urgent and essential repairs, identify a sustainable future and find a suitable end-user to take long-term responsibility for the asset.

**Activity Lead:** Nick Hill, National Conservation Projects Manager ([nick.hill@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:nick.hill@english-heritage.org.uk))

**Four-year resource:** £6.821M

### Protection Result 8A4.1: Major rescue purchases put in good repair and transferred to long-term beneficial use

English Heritage exceptionally undertakes the acquisition of heritage assets at risk aiming to complete repairs and transfer ownership into long-term beneficial use. During 2012 a further tranche of repair works was completed at Apethorpe Hall. A major contract has been let to finish off the whole of the outstanding urgent repairs, with a start on site in March 2013, and completion due at the end of 2014. Marketing of the property was undertaken in 2012, and it is hoped that a sale to new owners will be concluded when the current repairs contract is completed. A bid to the Heritage Lottery Fund for funding for works to Ditherington Flax Mill is being resubmitted in April 2013, but in the meantime, the process of appointing contractors for the main works is in hand. At Harmondsworth Barn, a consultant team has been appointed prepare the tender documentation with a view to repair work starting on site later in 2013/14. Arrangements are being made to transfer the ownership of Baguley Hall from the Secretary of State to a Building Preservation Trust. If these negotiations can be concluded satisfactorily we will provide grant for essential repairs and the BPT will seek partnership funding for the enhancement and re-use of the property for community uses. At the JW Evans silverware factory in Birmingham, a further programme of minor works was completed in 2012, and the site continues to be open for public tours, managed by English Heritage.

**Status:** ●

**Progress:** See text above.

**Date of completion:** Ongoing.

## ACTIVITY 8A5: OFFSETTING LOSS THROUGH KNOWLEDGE DIVIDEND

### Context

Where protection is simply not practically possible, we also offer funding of last resort to ensure that such loss is offset for the public benefit by increased understanding. English Heritage will, as far as we are able, continue to support investigation occasioned by unforeseen nationally significant discoveries made as part of responsible planning-conditioned development, and investigation of

nationally significant monuments threatened by unavoidable loss unrelated to planning-based change.

**Activity Lead:** Barney Sloane, Head of Strategic Planning and Management ([barney.sloane@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:barney.sloane@english-heritage.org.uk)), but see relevant Grant Scheme for application details.

**Four-year resource:** £4.105M

EH also provides limited funding of last resort for investigations of the historic environment. We can provide funding against three strands:

- i For unanticipated nationally significant discoveries as part of the planning process,
- ii For previously unknown nationally significant discoveries outside the planning process,
- iii For the securing and public access of investigation archives at risk of dispersal or loss.

In total there are currently 114 active projects under 8A5, a considerable number of which are the editorial or publication stages of legacy projects started before the NHPP was launched. 19 have been completed and published this year. Noteworthy projects under category (i) include the conservation of the exceptionally well-preserved Bronze Age log boats from [Must Farm](#), Cambridgeshire. In category (ii) the analysis of the extraordinary [Staffordshire Hoard](#), the largest hoard of Anglo-Saxon gold items ever found is also ongoing, funded by a partnership comprising Birmingham Museums Trust, Stoke Potteries Museum and Art Gallery and English Heritage. In category (iii) EH is funding two pilot projects on urban archaeological archives, at Ipswich and Nottingham, to develop secure, ordered archives from rescue excavations before 1990 with online access to their contents. The pilots will provide the basis for a wider strategy in opening access to important archives the contents of which have yet to be synthesised. Publications arising from this Activity include the following:

### Protection Result 8A5.1: Emergency investigation assistance in support of the planning process

Best, J and Woodward, A. 2011. 'Late Bronze Age Pottery Production: evidence from a 12th–11th century BC Settlement at Tinney's Lane, Sherborne, Dorset' *Proceedings of the Prehistoric Society* 78.

Boulter, S, and Walton Rogers, P, 2012. *Circles and Cemeteries: Excavations at Flixton* (Suffolk). East Anglia Archaeology no 147  
Carved in Stone a Late Iron Age and Roman Cemetery and evidence for a Saxon minster: excavations near St Nicholas Church in Great Wakering: Essex. *Transactions for the Essex Society for Archaeology and History* Vol 1 (Fourth Series 2010)

Chadwick Hawkes, S and Hawkes, C. 2012. *Longbridge Deverill Cow Down - An Early Iron Age Settlement in West Wiltshire*. Oxford University School of Archaeology. Monograph no. 76

Cooper, L et al. 2011. 'An Early Upper Palaeolithic Open-air Station and Mid-Devensian Hyaena Den at Grange Farm, Glaston, Rutland, UK'. *Proceedings of the Prehistoric Society*. Vol 78.

Cowie, R et al. 2012. *Lundenwic: Excavations in Middle Saxon London, 1987 - 2000*. MOLA Monograph 63.

- Farley, M. & Jones, G. 2012. *Iron Age Ritual: a hillfort and evidence for a minster at Aylesbury, Buckinghamshire*. Oxbow Books.
- Mainman, A and Jenner, A. 2013. Medieval Pottery from York. *The Archaeology of York: The Pottery 1979*. Council of British Archaeology.
- Ottaway, P, Qualman, K, Rees, H, & Scobie, G. 2012. *The Roman Cemeteries and Suburbs of Winchester: Excavations 1971-86*. Winchester Museums
- Peers, A. 2012. *Birmingham Town Hall. An Architectural History*. Lund Humphries.
- Pickstone, A and Mortimer, R. 'War Ditches, Cherry Hinton: Revisiting an Iron Age Hillfort.' *Proceedings of the Cambridge Antiquarian Society*. October 2012
- Pope, M et al (2012) High status late Iron Age and Romano-British Occupation of a Wealden Ridge at Beedings Hill; *West Sussex Archaeological Collections* 150
- Ripper, S and Beamish, M. 2011. 'Bogs, Bodies and Burnt Mounds: Visits to the Soar Wetlands in the Neolithic and Bronze Age' *Proceedings of the Prehistoric Society*. 78.
- Sloane, B, 2013. *The Augustinian nunnery of St Mary Clerkenwell, London*. MOLA Monograph 57.

## Protection Result 8A5.1: Emergency investigation assistance for threatened heritage outside the planning process

- Cunliffe, Barry. 2013. *The Roman Villa at Brading, Isle of Wight, the excavations of 2008-10*. Oxford University School of Archaeology, Monograph 77.
- Jackson, R. 2012. *Ariconium, Herefordshire: An Iron Age Settlement and Romano-British 'Small Town'*. Oxbow Books.
- Kirkham, G and Herring, H. 2012. *Cornish Archaeology; Hendhyscan Kernow 2009-10*. Cornwall Archaeological Society 48-49.
- Loveday, R 2012 'Aston on Trent I, Derbyshire - Excavation of a Round Barrow and Protected Cursus Land Surface' *Derbyshire Archaeological Journal*. Volume 132.
- White, R, et al 2013. *Wroxeter, the Cornovii and the Urban Process. Final report on the Wroxeter Hinterland Project 1994-1997. Volume 2 : Characterizing the City*. Archaeopres: Oxford.
- Wilkinson, J. et al. 2012. *Archaeology of the Essex Coast, Volume II: Excavations at the Prehistoric Site of the Stumble*. *East Anglian Archaeology* 144. Essex County Council.





If you would like this document in a different format,  
please contact our Customer Services department:

Telephone: 0870 333 1181

Fax: 01793 414926

Textphone: 01793 414878

E-mail: [customers@english-heritage.org.uk](mailto:customers@english-heritage.org.uk)

Designed by Vincent Griffin, English Heritage



ENGLISH HERITAGE